



Copyright © Eldon Mirjah & Gritty Languages LLC

No part of this book may be reproduced in any written, electronic, recording, or photocopying form without written permission of the author.

<https://www.grittyspanish.com>

Thanks for giving the **Gritty Spanish Basics** eBook a shot! Make sure to utilize the blue links within the transcripts to learn more about the words!

Once you're ready to return to where you left off, simply click the link again, and it will take you back into the conversation!

|                                                                                                                                                 |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>LEGAL NOTES .....</b>                                                                                                                        | <b>6</b>   |
| <b>EPISODE 1: THE INTRODUCTION .....</b>                                                                                                        | <b>7</b>   |
|  <b>BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....</b>                              | <b>12</b>  |
|  <b>Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..</b>   | <b>38</b>  |
|  <b>Quizzes for Episode 1 .....</b>                            | <b>38</b>  |
| <b>EPISODE 2: ORDERING AT RESTAURANT .....</b>                                                                                                  | <b>38</b>  |
|  <b>BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....</b>                              | <b>42</b>  |
|  <b>Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..</b>   | <b>54</b>  |
|  <b>Quizzes for Episode 2 .....</b>                            | <b>54</b>  |
| <b>EPISODE 3: HOTEL RESERVATION .....</b>                                                                                                       | <b>55</b>  |
|  <b>BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....</b>                              | <b>59</b>  |
|  <b>Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..</b>   | <b>66</b>  |
|  <b>Quizzes for Episode 3 .....</b>                            | <b>66</b>  |
| <b>EPISODE 4: DIRECTIONS .....</b>                                                                                                              | <b>67</b>  |
|  <b>BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....</b>                              | <b>69</b>  |
|  <b>Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..</b>   | <b>75</b>  |
|  <b>Quizzes for Episode 4 .....</b>                            | <b>76</b>  |
| <b>EPISODE 5: BAD WEATHER .....</b>                                                                                                             | <b>77</b>  |
|  <b>BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....</b>                            | <b>80</b>  |
|  <b>Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..</b> | <b>88</b>  |
|  <b>Quizzes for Episode 5 .....</b>                          | <b>88</b>  |
| <b>EPISODE 6: MEET MY SON .....</b>                                                                                                             | <b>89</b>  |
|  <b>BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....</b>                            | <b>92</b>  |
|  <b>Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..</b> | <b>98</b>  |
|  <b>Quizzes for Episode 6 .....</b>                          | <b>99</b>  |
| <b>EPISODE 7: WE ARE BROKE .....</b>                                                                                                            | <b>99</b>  |
|  <b>BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....</b>                            | <b>101</b> |
|  <b>Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..</b> | <b>106</b> |
|  <b>Quizzes for Episode 7 .....</b>                          | <b>106</b> |

|                                                                                                                                           |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>EPISODE 8: A CONVERSATION ABOUT A SONG .....</b>                                                                                       | <b>107</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                               | 110        |
|  Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..... | 125        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 8 .....                             | 125        |
| <b>EPISODE 9: DRINKS AT A BAR .....</b>                                                                                                   | <b>126</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                               | 128        |
|  Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..... | 135        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 9 .....                             | 135        |
| <b>EPISODE 10: TIME IN THE GYM .....</b>                                                                                                  | <b>136</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                               | 139        |
|  Some Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..... | 144        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 10.....                             | 145        |
| <b>EPISODE 11: GIRLFRIENDS SHOPPING .....</b>                                                                                             | <b>145</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                               | 148        |
|  Some Useful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ...    | 153        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 11 .....                            | 153        |
| <b>EPISODE 12: COOKING WITH DAUGHTER.....</b>                                                                                             | <b>154</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                              | 157        |
|  Useful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....     | 166        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 12.....                           | 166        |
| <b>EPISODE 13: FLIRTING WITH A WOMAN .....</b>                                                                                            | <b>167</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                             | 170        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....    | 176        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 13.....                           | 177        |
| <b>EPISODE 14: THE BANK .....</b>                                                                                                         | <b>177</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                             | 180        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....    | 189        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 14.....                           | 190        |
| <b>EPISODE 15: TIME ON THE BEACH.....</b>                                                                                                 | <b>190</b> |

|                                                                                                                                        |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                            | 193        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....   | 199        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 15.....                          | 199        |
| <b>EPISODE 16: SIGHTSEEING .....</b>                                                                                                   | <b>200</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                            | 202        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....   | 208        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 16.....                          | 209        |
| <b>EPISODE 17: TALKING ABOUT A MOVIE.....</b>                                                                                          | <b>209</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                            | 212        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....   | 219        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 17 .....                         | 219        |
| <b>EPISODE 18: THE FUNERAL.....</b>                                                                                                    | <b>220</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                            | 223        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....   | 233        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 18.....                          | 233        |
| <b>EPISODE 19: THE DREAM .....</b>                                                                                                     | <b>234</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                            | 237        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....  | 254        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 19 .....                       | 254        |
| <b>EPISODE 20: GOING TO A PARTY .....</b>                                                                                              | <b>255</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                          | 259        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..... | 271        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 20.....                        | 271        |
| <b>EPISODE 21: THE PROPOSAL .....</b>                                                                                                  | <b>272</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                          | 275        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! ..... | 284        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 21 .....                       | 284        |
| <b>EPISODE 22: FISHING IN THE RIVER.....</b>                                                                                           | <b>285</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                          | 288        |

|                                                                                                                                       |            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....  | 293        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 22.....                         | 293        |
| <b>EPISODE 23: CAR ACCIDENT.....</b>                                                                                                  | <b>294</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                           | 297        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....  | 307        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 23.....                         | 308        |
| <b>EPISODE 24: SOCIAL MEDIA .....</b>                                                                                                 | <b>308</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                           | 311        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....  | 321        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 24.....                         | 321        |
| <b>EPISODE 25: SALES CALL .....</b>                                                                                                   | <b>322</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                           | 326        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....  | 334        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 25.....                         | 335        |
| <b>EPISODE 26: LONG-DISTANCE RELATIONSHIP .....</b>                                                                                   | <b>336</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                           | 340        |
|  Helpful Articles on Our Gritty Spanish Blog! .....  | 350        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 26.....                        | 350        |
| <b>EPISODE 27: VISITING THE DOCTOR .....</b>                                                                                          | <b>351</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN .....                        | 354        |
|  Useful articles on the Gritty Spanish blog! ..... | 361        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 27 .....                      | 361        |
| <b>EPISODE 28: WHERE SHOULD WE GO? .....</b>                                                                                          | <b>362</b> |
|  BREAKING IT ALL DOWN.....                         | 366        |
|  Useful articles on the Gritty Spanish blog! ..... | 374        |
|  Quizzes for Episode 28.....                       | 374        |
| <b>PURCHASE GRITTY SPANISH BASICS AUDIO! 25% OFF!.....</b>                                                                            | <b>374</b> |

# Legal Notes

This is a work of fiction. Names, characters, businesses, places, events and incidents are either the products of the author's imagination or used in a fictitious manner. Any resemblance to actual persons, living or dead, or actual events is purely coincidental.

# Episode 1: The Introduction



## Synopsis:

Walking down the street, Ariana and Pablo meet for the first time. The two speak about where they are from, where they live, what they do, how old they are, children, their ages, etc. You'll learn lots of common phrases in this conversation between the two all in context...([Back to episode list](#))

**Ariana:** Hola, ¿cómo estás hoy? ¿Todo está bien? ¿Qué tal?

**Ariana:** Hello, how are you today? Is everything okay? What's up?

**Pablo:** Sí, todo está bien. Hoy es un día perfecto, así que, todo está bien, gracias a Dios.

**Paul:** Yes, everything is fine. Today is a perfect day, so, everything is okay, thank God.

**Ariana:** ¿Cómo te llamas? Soy Ariana.

**Ariana:** What is your name? I am Ariana.

**Pablo:** Me llamo Pablo, es un placer conocerle, Ariana.

**Paul:** My name is Paul, it's a pleasure to meet you, Ariana.

**Ariana:** Es un placer conocerte también, Pablo.

**Ariana:** It's a pleasure to meet you too, Paul.

**Pablo:** ¿De dónde eres?

**Paul:** Where are you from?

**Ariana:** Soy de Venezuela, ¿y tú? ¿De qué país eres tú?

**Ariana:** I am from Venezuela, and you? What country are you from?

**Pablo:** Soy de México. Quiero ir a Venezuela un día. ¿Es lindo allá?

**Paul:** I am from Mexico. I want to go to Venezuela one day. It's beautiful there?

**Ariana:** Sí, es muy bello en mi país. Quiero visitar México. ¿De qué parte de México eres tú?

**Ariana:** Yes, it's very beautiful in my country. I want to visit Mexico. Which part of Mexico are you from?

**Pablo:** Soy de la Ciudad de México, pero yo vivo en Puebla en este momento. ¿Y tú? ¿De qué parte de Venezuela eres tú?

**Paul:** I am from Mexico City, but I live in Puebla at the moment. And you? Which part of Venezuela are you from?

**Ariana:** Soy de Caracas, la capital.

**Ariana:** I am from Caracas, the capital.

**Pablo:** ¿Qué haces en Caracas? ¿Vives allá?

**Paul:** What do you do in Caracas? Do you live there?

**Ariana:** No, vivo en Nueva York, en los Estados Unidos. Trabajo allí también.

**Ariana:** No, I live in New York, in the United States. I work there too.

**Pablo:** Ah está bien, quiero visitar Nueva York pronto. ¿Cuántos años tienes?

**Paul:** Oh okay, I want to visit New York soon. How old are you?

**Ariana:** Tengo diecinueve años. ¿Cuántos años tienes tú?

**Ariana:** I am 19 years old. How old are you?

**Pablo:** Tengo veinte años. ¿Tú trabajas en Nueva York?

**Paul:** I am 20 years old. Do you work in New York?

**Ariana:** Sí, trabajo en Nueva York. Trabajo en un supermercado.

**Ariana:** Yes, I work in New York. I work in a supermarket.

**Pablo:** ¿Te gusta tu trabajo?

**Paul:** Do you like your job?

**Ariana:** No realmente, necesito un mejor trabajo. Quiero ganar más dinero.

**Ariana:** Not really, I need a better job. I want to make more money.

**Pablo:** A mí tampoco, no me gusta mi trabajo. ¿Tienes niños?

**Paul:** Me neither, I don't like my job. Do you have kids?

**Ariana:** Todavía no, pero, me gustaría tenerlos en el futuro. ¿Tú tienes hijos?

**Ariana:** Not yet, but, I would like to have them in the future. Do you have kids?

**Pablo:** ¿Yo? Sí, yo tengo dos, un niño y una niña. Quiero más hijos.

**Paul:** Me? Yes, I have 2, a boy and a girl. I want more children.

**Ariana:** Ok, qué bien. Entonces, ¿qué vas a hacer ahora?

**Ariana:** Okay, how nice. So, what are you going to do now?

**Pablo:** Ahora mismo, Voy a ir a la playa. Más tarde, voy a ir a casa y dormir.

**Paul:** Right now, I am going to go to the beach. Later, I am going to go home and sleep.

**Ariana:** ¿Puedo ir contigo? Me encanta la playa.

**Ariana:** Can I come with you? I love the beach.

**Pablo:** Claro, pero puedes ir conmigo en otra ocasión.

**Paul:** Of course, but you can go with me another time.

**Ariana:** Está bien, no hay problema. bueno, fue un placer conocerte. ¿Vamos a ser amigos?

**Ariana:** Okay, no problem. Well, nice to meet you. Are we going to be friends?

**Pablo:** Claro que sí, quiero ser tu amigo.

**Paul:** Of course, yes, I want to be your friend.

**Ariana:** Está bien, quiero tu número. Aquí está el mío.

**Ariana:** Okay, I want your number. Here is mine.

**Pablo:** Ok, aquí está mi número, ¿tú tienes WhatsApp?

**Paul:** Okay, here is my number, you have WhatsApp?

**Ariana:** Sí, todo el mundo tiene esta aplicación en sus teléfonos, jejeje. Voy a enviarte un mensaje más tarde, ¿está bien?

**Ariana:** Yes, everybody has this app on their phone, hehehe. I am going to send you a message later, okay?

**Pablo:** Está bien, ¡genial! Bueno, fue un placer conocerte, Ariana. Eres una buena persona. Que tengas un buen día.

**Paul:** Okay, great! Well, nice to meet you, Ariana. You're a nice person. Have a good day.

**Ariana:** Fue un placer conocerte también, Pablo. Eres una buena persona también. Que tengas un lindo día en la playa.

**Ariana:** Nice to meet you too Paul. You're a good

person too. Have a beautiful day at the beach.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Éstás:** The first thing the character said was, “*hola*”, which of course means, “*hello*” or “*Hi*”.

You'll see this on the English side of the transcript.

Then she went on to say, “¿*Cómo estás?*”.

This is the most common way to greet someone in Spanish. People will greet you the same way in the real-world face to face, via text messages, etc.

“*Cómo*” means, “*How*”.

The word, “*estás*” means, “*are you*” or “*you are*”.

“*Estás*” comes from the verb, “*Estar*”, which means, “*To be*”.

And *estás* is the “*Tú*” form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Here is how the verb *Estar* (*to be*) is conjugated in the present indicative tense...

**Yo** Estoy – I am

**Tú** Estás – You (informal) are

**Él/Ella** Está – She/He is

**Usted** Está – You (formal) are

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Estamos – We are

**Ustedes** Están- You all are

**Ellos/Ellas** Están – They are

**Vosotros** Estáis- You all (informal) are \*Only in Spain

There is another VERY important verb that also means “To be” in Spanish, it is, “Ser”. The verbs **Estar** and **Ser** confuse new Spanish learners, but I am positive that you'll soon get the hang of it.

You'll come across both verbs in this conversation as well as other conversations throughout this resource.

The verb **Estar** is used when talking about the following:

- Condition/Physical State
- Geographic/Physical Location
- Position
- Progressing Action
- Condition/Physical State
- Emotions

Etc.

The verb **ser** is used to talk about the following:

- Place of Origin
- Occupation
- Nationality
- Religious/Political Affiliation
- Characteristics

Etc.

You can read more about when to use Ser/Estar [in this amazing blog post on our Gritty Spanish blog!](#)

**Está:** As mentioned with the word, “Estás”(You are), “Está” is the third person singular version of the verb used in the present indicative tense. The verb “Estar” means To be. She asked, “¿Todo está bien?” (Everything is okay/well?).

So, this is a perfect example of a temporary state.

Being that “*Está*” is the third person, you can say:

“*Él **está** loco*”

“*He **is** crazy*”.

“*Ella **está** allí*”.

“*She **is** over there*”

*Está* is used in those examples because she is saying the word “*Todo*” (all/everything) which is third person. You always use the *Él/ella/usted* form of a verb when referring to a “third person” or thing.

**¿Qué tal?**: If you ever want to say, “*What’s up*” in Spanish, “*¿Qué tal?*” is a great phrase to use.

**Example:**

“*¿**Qué tal**, José? ¿Cómo estás?*”.

“***What’s up** Joe? How are you?*”

You can also say, “*¿Qué pasa?*”, when you want to say, “*What’s up*”, as in “*what is wrong?*” or “*what’s happening?*”

**Example:**

“*No sé **qué pasa** con Karen últimamente, ella es muy grosera ahora.*”

“*I don’t know **what’s up** with Karen lately, she is very rude now.*”

You can read more about some basic Spanish greeting in **[this post on our Gritty Spanish blog.](#)**

**Es**: This little word, “*Es*”, you’ll be using it a lot in your Spanish-learning journey. It comes from the verb, “*ser*” (to be). “*Es*” is the third person singular version of the verb,

“Ser”(to be) or the formal second-person singular (usted) present indicative form of the verb, “Ser”(to be).

The reason it is “es” it's because he is talking about, “*The perfect day*” (el día perfecto).

The perfect day is the “*third person*”.

Here is how the verb, “Ser” (to be) is conjugated in the present indicative tense....

**Yo** Soy – I am

**Tú** Eres – You (informal) are

**Él/Ella** Es –He/she/ is

**Usted** Es – You (formal) are

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Somos – We are

**Ustedes** Son – You all are

**Ellos/Ellas** Son – They are

**Vosotros** Sois– You all (informal) are \*Only used in Spain

Here are a couple of **examples** of “es” in action:

“El cielo **es** azul”.

“The sky **is** blue”

“Jennifer **es** fantástica.”

“Jennifer **is** fantastic.”

The *third person* is also used formally, also known as the *usted form*.

For example, if you want to ask someone the following in the “*tú*” form, you'd say,

“¿**Eres** de Panamá?”

“**Are you** from Panama?”

But if you wanted to ask another person the same question in the “*Usted*” form, then it will be,

“¿**Es** de Panamá?”

“**Are you** from Panama?”

Cool huh? It's like you're talking about someone else.

That same, “¿**Es** de Panamá?” can also be, “**He/she** is from Panama?”.

You can also say, “**He/she** is from Panama?” like, so,  
“¿**Él/Ella** es de Panamá?”.

You can learn more about the differences between **usted** and **tú** [in this blog post on the Gritty Spanish blog!](#)

Many times, you'll hear/read Spanish and the personal subject pronouns, “**Él/Ella**” are included. In this case, they're not included, that's because, in Spanish, they are not necessary to include. The verb form used already contains the subject pronouns...

That will seem weird at first, but it's something you'll surely get accustomed to. Throughout this version of Gritty Spanish, you'll hear characters use verbs with and without the subject pronoun by design.

[¿Cómo te llamas?](#) : So, she asked, “*What's your name?*” (¿Cómo te llamas?). In a Spanish-speaking person's mind, it's, “*What do you call yourself?*”.

Sound funny right?

Believe it or not, this is a more “advanced” way of speaking since we are using the verb, “*Llamar*”(to call) in a reflexive manner.

Here is a list of reflexive pronouns with subjects...

Yo – **me**

Tú – **te**

Él, Ella, Usted – **se**

Nosotros – **nos**

Vosotros – **os**

Ellos, Ellas, Ustedes – **se**

In the phrase, “¿Cómo **te** llamas?”, the “llamas” is the “Tú” form of the verb, “Llamar” (to call), this is why the “**te**” was used.

If it was a group of people and you asked, “What are **their** names?”, it’s, “¿Cómo **se** llaman?”, literally meaning, “What do they call themselves?”.

I had some real issues using reflexive verbs, not knowing I’ve been using it ever since grade school. Years later, not knowing any Spanish, one phrase I always knew and said without any effort at all was, “¿cómo te llamas?”.

So, if you know how to say, “¿Cómo te llamas?”, this means that you understand some of the basics on how to use verbs in a reflexive manner and say something like, “I brush my teeth”(Me cepillo los dientes) or “I wake up”(me despierto)

In this version of Gritty Spanish, the characters will not be using reflexive verbs much, but you’ll certainly come across them.

**Me llamo:** This is another example of a phrase we say often. We use the verb “Llamar”(to call) in a reflexive manner without thinking too much about it...

“Me llamo...” is like saying, “I call myself...”.

You can also say, “*Mi nombre es...*” when you want to say, “*My name is...*”

I think most of us are more comfortable answering this way because it's similar to how we would answer in English, right?

But he said, “*Me llamo Pablo*”... Which is like saying, “*I call myself Pablo*”.

New learners will often say, “*Me llamo es pablo*” which is incorrect, but you'll be understood. To a Spanish-speaking person's ear, it will sound like, “*I call myself is Pablo*”.

Here is how “*Llamar*” (To call) is conjugated in the present indicative tense...

**Yo** Llamo – I call

**Tú** Llamas – You(informal) call

**Él/Ella/Usted** Llama - He/she/calls

**Usted** Llama – You (formal) call

**Nosotros/Nosotras** llamamos - We call.

**Ustedes** Llaman –You all call

**Ellos/Ellas** Llaman – They call

**Vosotros** Llamáis – You all (informal) call \*Only used in Spain.

**Conocer**: The verb “*Conocer*” means, “*To know*” and in this context, it means, “*to meet*”. But see the “**te**” is attached to the verb, making it “*Conocer**TE***”.

Here, the pronoun “*Te*” means, “*you*”.

So, if you wanted to say, “*It's a pleasure to meet/know **HER***”, you'll add the “*la*” at the end of the verb... Like so:

“*Es un placer conocer**la***”

If you wanted to say that about a man, it would be:

*"Es un placer conocer**lo**."*

*"It's a pleasure to meet **him**."*

So, "**La**" is woman, "**Lo**" is man.

As you advance with your Spanish, you'll learn that **La** can also mean a feminine article, such as "**La**

*Piscina*"(the pool), and **Lo** is a male article, such as, "**El** carro"(**The** car).

You'll see some of examples of this in context throughout Gritty Spanish Basics.

**¿De dónde eres?**: Isn't it funny that the "De" which means, "From" is the first word in the sentence? That is because when speaking Spanish, you don't end with "From" like we do in English.

Here, it's literally saying, "**From** where are you?".

The word, "dónde" means, "where".

*Eres*, comes from the verb, "ser"(to be). She is talking to him in an informal matter, so of course, she is using the "Tú" form of the verb, "*Eres*" in the present indicative tense.

"Where is **she** from" would be, "¿De dónde **es** (ella)?".

And you'd use "Es" when asking a person where they are from using a formal tone. You'll say, "¿De dónde es (usted)?".

How do you say, "Where are **THEY** from"?

“¿De dónde **son**? (ellos)”.

**Soy:** This word is from the verb, “Ser”(to be) and it's the first-person singular “Yo” form of the verb in the present indicative tense. So, when you are speaking in the present tense, “Soy” (I am) is the correct option to use.

### Examples:

“**Soy** Jorge.”

“**I am** George.”

“**Soy** de Perú.”

“**I am** from Peru.”

“**Soy** dentista.”

“**I am** a dentist.”

When talking about yourself, saying, “I am from...”, “I am a dentist/student/doctor/teacher/technician” etc., think of “**Soy** sauce”.

**Quiero ir:** It's really easy to create sentences in Spanish once you understand that most times the first verb is conjugated and the second one is not.

The first conjugated verb, “Quiero”(I want) comes from the verb, “Querer”(to want/to love) and the second one, “ir”(to go) is not. It's the full, unconjugated form of the verb.

Let's start with “Quiero”. This is the first person singular, present indicative tense of the verb “Querer”(to want/to love). You can call it the “Yo” form of the verb if that makes it easier for you, it sure does for me.

The verb “ir” means, “to go”.

So **Quiero ir** together means, “I want to go”.

This was the very first real sentence I learned how to say in Spanish.

Then after that, I added, “To the movies”.... Making it, “**Quiero ir al cine**”.

I added more places, such as, **piscina**(pool) (*Quiero ir a la **piscina***), **banco**(Bank) (*Quiero ir al **banco***), **show** (*Quiero ir al **show***), etc...

Ah memories.

The character in this conversation used the same formula, except, instead of “To the movies” etc., he said, “To Venezuela”.

“**Quiero ir** a Venezuela...”

“**I want to go** to Venezuela...”

**Allá:** You're going to love using this little word, “Allá”. It means, “There” or “Over there”. Same with the word, “Allí”. You can use them interchangeably.

### Examples:

“No quiero ir **allá**.”

“I don't want to go **there**.”

“¿Quieres ir **allí**?”

“You want to go **over there**?”

“El libro está **allí**.”

“The book is over **there**.”

**Visitar:** The character said, “*Quiero visitar*”(I want to visit).  
Like the previous, it's using the first verb which is conjugated, then the complete, nonconjugated verb follows to create a sentence (albeit incomplete).

*Visitar* is a verb that means, “*To visit*”.

“*Quiero visitar...*” ¿pero dónde? (but where?)

The character said, “*Mexico*”(México).

Making it, “*Quiero visitar México*”.

### Examples:

“*Quiero **visitar** a mi madre.*”

“*I want **to visit** my mom.*”

“*¡Quiero **ver** la película!*”

“*I want **to see** the movie.*”

“*Quiero **trabajar** en un banco.*”

“*I want **to work** in a bank.*”

“*No quiero **ir** al trabajo hoy.*”

“*I don't want **to go** to work today.*”

“*¿Quieres **ir** conmigo?*”

“*You want **to go** with me?*”

**Vivo:** This word comes from the verb, “*Vivir*” and it means, “*To live*”. “*Vivo*” is the Yo form (First-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Here is the conjugation of the verb “*vivir*” in the preterit indicative form...

**Yo** Vivo – I live

**Tú** Vives – You live

**Él/Ella** Vive – He/she/lives

**Usted** Vive - You (formal) live

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Vivimos – We live

**Ustedes** Viven - You all live

**Ellos/Ellas** Viven – They live

**Vosotros** Vivís – You all (informal) live \*Only used in Spain

So, if you want to say, “**We live** in Miami”, then you'd say,

“**Vivimos** en Miami.”

“**Viven** en Perú.”

“**They live** in Perú.”

“**Él/ella vive** en Colombia.”

“**He/she lives** in Colombia.”

And so on...

**Haces:** The word “haces” comes from the verb, “Hacer”(to do/to make). *Haces* is the “Tú” form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. The character said, “¿Que haces en Caracas?”.

Anytime you want to ask someone “*What you’re doing right now/what you do?*”, you can say, “¿Qué haces?”

Here is how the verb *hacer* (to do/to make) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Hago – I do/ I make

**Tú** Haces – You do/ you make

**Él/Ella** Hace – He/she/ does/makes

**Usted** Hace-you (formal) do/make

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Hacemos – We do/ we make

**Ustedes** Hacen – You all do/ you all make

**Ellos/Ellas** Hacen – They do/they make

**Vosotros** hacéis (informal, used only in Spain) – You do/make.

**Tengo:** The word “tengo” comes from the verb, “Tener”(to have). *Tengo* is the first person/“Yo” form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

When you are talking about your age, you have to use the verb, “Tener”(to have).

**For example:**

“**Tiene** veinticinco años.”

“**He** is 25 yrs. Old.”

In this example, the *Él/Ella/usted* form of *tener*(to have) was used in the present indicative tense.

Also notice, it wasn't, “**Él** tiene veinticinco años”?

Adding the subject pronoun, *Él* would have been fine too, but the subject pronoun is not necessary, and there is nothing wrong with using it, especially when you want to be more specific.

So, you may be asking yourself, “How do you know it's a him or her?”, simple answer - the context...

Sometimes, you may say something not using the subject pronoun, and a Spanish-speaking native may ask, “¿*Quién?*”(who?).

**Other examples:**

**"Tienen** tres años."

**"They are** three years old."

**"Tenemos** doce años."

**"We are** twelve years old."

Of course, you'll also use the verb, "Tener"(to have) to talk about possessions...

### Examples:

**"Tengo** un carro."

**"I have** a car."

**"Tienes** dos gatos."

**"You have** 2 cats."

**"Tienen** frutas allí."

**"They have** fruits over there."

**"No tenemos** dinero."

**"We don't have** money."

**Te gusta:** You'll use "Te gusta" often in Spanish. If you're out on a date, for example, and you look over at your girlfriend/boyfriend and want to make sure they like the food, you'll ask, "¿Te gusta?"(You like it?).

Where does it come from?

Well, the word "gusta" here comes from the verb, "Gustar"(to be pleasing to). "Gusta" is the **Él/Ella/Usted** form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

Gusta is the "third" person singular+usted form, so this is why you have to use the "Él/Ella/Usted" form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

So, when you ask a person, “¿Te gusta?”, you’re asking them, “Is it pleasing to you?”.

So, the “**YOU**” here is, “**Te**”.

It’s used in a reflexive manner, just like when you say, “¿Cómo te llamas?” (What do you call yourself) when someone asks your name.

How do you say, “I like it” or, “I like”?

“**Me gusta**”.

This is like saying, “It’s pleasing to me”.

So, if you wanted to say, “I like the house” for example...

It will be, “**Me gusta la casa**” or in a Spanish-speaking native’s mind, “The house is pleasing to me”.

I know it probably feels strange, but I promise you, speaking like this will become second nature after a while.

There are other verbs like *Gustar* (to be pleasing to) you can use in a similar fashion.

You can learn a little bit about them [in this post](#) on our Gritty Spanish blog.

So, as you can see, verbs like *Gustar* you don’t conjugate them like you do other verbs...

You DON’T say, “**Yo Gusto**” when you want to say that you like something.

Here is an **example** of how to conjugate the verb, “*Gustar*” in the present indicative form...

**Me gusta** – I like (It's pleasing to me)

**Te gusta** – You like (It's pleasing to you)

**Le gusta** - He/she/usted likes (It's pleasing to him/her)

**Le gustan** – They like (It's pleasing to them)

**Nos gusta** – We like (It's pleasing to us).

### Other examples:

“¿**No te gusta** la bebida?”

“**You don't like** the drink?”

“**No les gusta** la película.”

“**They don't like** the movie.”

**necesito**: This is another important verb. “Necesito”(I need) comes from the verb, “Necesitar”(to need). Necesito is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

This is how the verb is conjugated in the present indicative tense...

**Yo Necesito** – I need

**Tú Necesitas** – You need

**Él/Ella Necesita** – He/she needs

**Usted Necesita**- You (formal) need

**Nosotros/Nosotras Necesitamos** – We need

**Ustedes Necesitan** – You all need

**Ellos/Ellas Necesitan** – They need

**Vosotros Necesitáis**- You all (informal) need (Only used in Spain)

### Examples:

“**Necesito** dinero.”

“**I need** money.”

“**They need** a life.”

“**Necesitan** una vida.”

“**We need** to go.”

“**Necesitamos** ir.”

“**You need** a job.”

“**Necesitas** un trabajo.”

**Quiero ganar**: Making sentences using verbs in Spanish is easy as I've said before.

You'll generally conjugate the first one, and use the infinitive/nonconjugated verb of the second.

This is a classic example, the first word, “*Quiero*”, which means, “*I want*”. It comes from the verb, “*Querer*”(to want).

Here, it is used in the first person singular, present indicative tense. This is the “Yo” form of the verb.

*Ganar*, as you'll notice, is not conjugated, the infinitive/nonconjugated verb is used.

The verb, “*Ganar*” means, “*to earn/to win*”. So that phrase, “*Quiero ganar*” can also be, “*I want to win*”, but in the conversation, it's, “*I want **to make/earn***”.

As you can see in the transcript, she adds the “*más dinero*” to it, making it, “*Quiero ganar más dinero*”(I want to make/to earn more money).

You'll hear Spanish-speaking natives use the verb, “*Hacer*”(to do/to make) a lot when talking about wanting

to make money, they'll say, "*Quiero hacer dinero*" (I want to make money).

Here is how the verb, "*querer*" (to want) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Quiero – I want

**Tú** Quieres – You want

**Él/Ella** Quiere – He/she wants

**Usted** Quiere – You (formal) want

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Queremos – We want

**Ustedes** Quieren \_ You all want

**Ellos/Ellas** Quieren – They want

**Vosotros** Queréis- You all (informal) want (Only used in Spain)

**Examples** of how to use **Querer** in the present indicative tense:

"**Quiero** ser bueno."

"**I want** to be good."

"**Quiero** tener un carro."

"**I want** to have/to own a car."

"¿**Quieres** aprender español rápido?"

"**You want** to learn Spanish fast?"

See how the infinitive/unconjugated verbs are right after the conjugated verb, "*Querer*"?

"¿**Quieres** ir a tu casa?"

"**You want** to go to your house?"

See how the infinitive/unconjugated verb, "*ir*" (to go) is right after the conjugated verb, "*Quieres*"?

**“Quiere** *estar contigo*”

**“She wants** *to be with you*”

Do you also notice that no subject pronouns are used? This is because it is usually determined by the context.

Here is how the verb, “Ganar” (to make/to win) is conjugated in the present indicative tense:

**Yo** Gano – I win

**Tú** Ganas – You win

**Él/Ella** Gana – He/he wins

**Usted** gana- You (formal) win

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Ganamos – We win

**Ustedes** Ganan- You all win

**Ellos/ellas** **ganan** – They win

**Vosotros** Ganáis- You all (informal) win (Only used in Spain)

**Gustaría tenerlos**: The first word, “gustaría” means, ***I would like***. This is considered more advanced Spanish, but it's important to talk about what you **WOULD like** even at the basic level.

When I first started, this was a word I learned, without knowing the technicalities, I just knew that it meant, ***I would like***.

The word *gustaría* is the first or third person singular conditional indicative of the verb *gustar* (to like/to be pleasing to).

When you get to a more advanced level, you'll learn to appreciate learning that word early.

So, if you want to say, “***I would like*** a coffee”, it's “***Me gustaría*** un café”.

So “*Me gustaría*” is the conjugated form of the verb *Gustar*.

She continues, “I would like **to have**”.

So she uses the full/nonconjugated verb, “Tener”(to have), but you’ll notice that she also added the “los” to it right? Making it, “Tener**los**”(to have them).

As I’ve mentioned, this is a bit more advanced Spanish, but it’s still great to have a general idea of how it’s used.

By her adding the **los**, it means, “Them” in this context. Now, if she had said, “Tener**LAS**” then the guy she is conversing with would have thought that she wanted **Girls**, and **girls** only.

She said **los**, because one, she doesn’t know if she will have boys or girls. And if it was all boys, it would be *los*, but if it was 20 girls and one boy, guess what? It would still be **los**.

**Examples** of how to use *gustaría*...

“**Me gustaría** ver la película”

“**I would like** to see the movie”

“¿**Te gustaría** viajar a México?”

“**Would you** like to travel to Mexico?”

Both examples, as you can see, the infinitive verbs, “ver”(to see) and “viajar”(to travel) were used right after the conjugated verb.

“Me gustaria **verla**”

“I would like to **see it**”.

The verb, “Ver”, means, “to see”. The “la” attached to it, means, ‘it’. What is, “**it**”? “**La película**”. This is another example of when the character said, “Tener**los**”, but now

we are talking about a word that is singular and feminine, "**La película**"(the movie).

**¿Qué vas a hacer?:** If someone wants to see what you're **GOING TO DO**, then they will ask this question.

Qué = What

"Vas" is the *tú* (informal) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense, it comes from the verb, "*ir*"(to go). You'll love using the verb, "*ir*"(to go) to talk about what you or someone else is going to do. You'll see many examples of this in this version of Gritty Spanish.

The verb, "*Hacer*" means, "*to do /to make*".

Here is how the verb *hacer*(to do/to make) in the present tense.

**Yo** Hago – I do / I make

**Tú** Haces – You do /You make

**Él/Ella/** hace – He/she does

**Usted** Hace- You (formal) do

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Hacemos – We do

**Ustedes** Hacen- You all do

**Ellos/Ellas** Hacen – They do

**Vosotros** Hacéis – You all (informal)do

Other times, you will hear *¿Qué estás haciendo?*, which means "*What are you doing **right now/at this very moment?***"

If you want to ask "*what are you doing + something in the future; such as 'next Friday', 'this weekend', 'tomorrow',* then you have to say "*¿Qué vas a hacer?*"

What are you doing on Friday? = *¿Qué vas a hacer el viernes?*

¿Qué vas a hacer? Also means “What are you going to do?”

¿Qué vas a hacer con tu vida? = What are you doing to do with your life?

**Voy a ir** : “Voy” is a word you’ll love using! You’ll hear it throughout this version of Gritty Spanish a lot. It’s used to talk about what you or someone else is **GOING TO DO**. So saw the verb “ir” conjugated to the “TÚ” form in the previous, using “Vas”(You’re going).

Let’s break it down a bit.

“Voy”(I am going) is from the verb, “ir”(to go). Voy is the “Yo” form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. Using the verb, “ir” is a great way to talk about the future without actually using the future tense of a verb, when you want to talk about what you are **GOING to do**.

This is how the verb, “ir”(to go) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Voy – I am going

**Tú** Vas – You are going

**Él/Ella/ Va** – He / She is going

**Usted** Va -You (formal) are going

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Vamos – We are going

**Ustedes** Van – You all are going

**Ellos/Ellas** Van – They are going

**Vosotros** Vais- You (informal) are going \* Only used in Spain

So, if you want to say “**you are going** to sing”, using the informal tú form, it’s simply, “**Vas a cantar**”.

You don’t say, “**Vas cantar**” you need that **a** there, “Vas **a** cantar”, “Voy **a** ir”.

Other **examples....**

**"Voy a hacer una torta."**

**"I am going to make a cake."**

**"Van a viajar a Cuba."**

**"They are going to travel to Cuba."**

**"Vamos a llegar pronto."**

**"We are going to arrive soon."**

**"Voy a estar aquí."**

**"I am going to be here."**

**"Vas a ser grande un día."**

**"You're going to be great one day."**

See the pattern? You'll love using this formula when talking about what you are **going to do**. As you become more comfortable with the language, you'll find yourself naturally easing into the future tense.

**Está bien**: When you just want to say "Okay" in Spanish, you can simply say, "Ok". But another very popular way to say this is, "**Está bien**".

Sometimes you'll hear, "**de acuerdo**".

"**Está**" comes from the verb, "**Estar**"(to be). **Está** is the third person, *Él/ella/usted* singular form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. When you say, "**Está bien**", it's like you're saying, "**It's okay**". The "**it**" is the 3<sup>rd</sup> "person", so that's why you use that form of the verb.

If you ever wanted to ask someone, "**are you okay?**", you'll say, "**¿Estás bien?**".

We are okay, "**Estamos bien**".

I am fine, "**Estoy** bien".

**Sus teléfonos:** When you look at the English side of the transcript, you'll see that "**teléfonos**" means, *phones*, that's an easy one. Same as the word before it, "**Sus**". You'll see that it says, "*Their*".

## Possessive Adjectives

There are two forms of possessive adjectives in Spanish: the short form and the long form. Each has its form and uses. The table below gives you the short form.

| Singular Noun -  | Plural Noun       | Translation                |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Mi</b>        | Mis               | My                         |
| <b>Tu</b>        | Tus               | Your/ Yours (Familiar)     |
| <b>Su</b>        | Sus               | Their, your, his, her, its |
| <b>Nuestro/a</b> | Nuestros/Nuestras | Our                        |

So now you know why the character said, "**Sus** teléfonos".

**Voy a enviarte:** So this is yet another example of how the verb "*ir*" (to go) is used to talk about what you or someone else is going to do. Great verb to talk about the future without using the future tense.

In later conversations, characters will speak a little in the future tense, but you'll hear them speak about what they are going to do a lot more in the present tense, using "*ir*" (to go).

Again, **Voy** is the "Yo" (first person singular) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. This is how it's conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Voy – I am going

**Tú** Vas – You are going

**Él/Ella** Va – He / She is going

**Usted** Va -You (formal) are going

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Vamos – We are going

**Ustedes** Van – You all are going

**Ellos/Ellas** Van – They are going

**Vosotros** Vais- You (informal) are going \* Only used in Spain

*Enviar* is a verb that means, "To send".

**Eres:** This comes from the verb, "Ser" (to be). *Eres* is the *Tú* form (informal second-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

So, if you wanted to say, "**I am** a good person", you'd say, "**Soy una buena persona**".

We use "*Buena*" here and not "*Bueno*", because the word for "person" (*persona*) is feminine. Now if you say, "*I am good*" and you're a woman, you'd say, "**Soy buena**", or a man will say, "**Soy bueno**".

You can learn more about gender in Spanish [in this Gritty Spanish blog post](#).

**Que tengas:** This is another example of some advance Spanish we use every day, even at the basic/beginner level and not even realize it.

When you want to tell someone, "*have a nice day*" in Spanish, just say, "*Que tengas un buen día*". I went a long time saying this phrase without knowing why I was saying "*Que tengas*".

The word, “*Tengas*” comes from the verb, “*Tener*”(to have). *Tengas* is the *tú* (Informal second-person singular) form the in present subjunctive mode of this verb.

To avoid confusion, we won't focus on this mode in this version of Gritty Spanish, however.

The subjunctive is used to indicate a feeling about something, if you're interested in learning more, you may read a little bit more about it [in this informative Gritty Spanish blog post](#).

**Fue un placer conocerte** : A great phrase to memorize. If you want to say “*nice to meet you*”, you have different options in Spanish:

-Encantado(a) de conocerte

-Mucho gusto

-Fue un placer conocerte (it was nice to meet you)

-It is nice to meet you (es un placer conocerte)

The only difference between the last two is the tense where “*fue*” is “*it was*”; and “*es*” is “*it is*”.

You can use the word, “*fue*” when you want to say, “*It was*”. “*Fue*” actually comes from the verb, “*ser*”(to be) but it's being used in the preterite indicate tense. You'll see it in action in other conversations in this version of Gritty Spanish.

A great way to answer when someone says, “*It's a pleasure meeting you*”, etc. is by using the word, “*Igualmente*”, which means “*Equally*”, but in this context, you use it to say, “*Likewise*”, or “*Same here*”.

### Another Example:

**Verenice:** "Me gusta trabajar contigo en este proyecto."

**Verenice:** "I enjoy working with you on this project."

**Juan:** "Igualmente."

**John:** "Likewise."

You'll hear the word, "Igualmente" a lot. Natives will also shorten it and just say, "Igual" (Equal/Same).

### SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Ser vs Estar in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Tips for mastering verb conjugations](#)
- ✓ [Spanish conversational starters](#)
- ✓ [How to introduce yourself in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Spanish present tense](#)
- ✓ [167 Essential Basic Spanish Words & Phrases](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### Quizzes for Episode 1

[Click](#) on image below to access!



## Episode 2: Ordering at Restaurant



### Synopsis:

Jesús walks into a restaurant and the waitress, Luna attends to him. He orders coffee, food, and even mentions her excellent service at the end. You'll learn some things to say when you're at a restaurant and ready to place an order. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gitty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

*\*Un hombre entra en un restaurante\**

*\*A man enters a restaurant\**

**Luna:** [Buenas tardes](#) señor. Bienvenido al restaurante estrella. ¿Cómo [puedo ayudarle](#)?

**Luna:** Good evening sir. Welcome to the star restaurant. How may I help you?

**Jesús:** Gracias, [muchacha](#), buenas tardes a usted también. Tengo tanta hambre; ¿[puedo ver](#) el menú?

**Jesús:** Thanks, young lady, good evening to you as well. I am so hungry; may I see the menu?

**Luna:** Claro, ¿para cuántas personas?

**Luna:** Of course, for how many people?

**Jesús:** No hay nadie más, solo yo.

**Jesús:** There's no one else, just me.

**Luna:** Está bien, puede sentarse allí por la ventana. ¿Le gustaría tomar algo? Tenemos algunas especiales increíbles.

**Luna:** Okay, you may have a seat over there by the window. Would you like something to drink? We have some amazing Specials.

**Jesús:** No, ahora no, es demasiado temprano para beber alcohol. Un café está bien, con muy poca azúcar, por favor.

**Jesús:** No, not now, it's too early to drink alcohol. A coffee is fine with very little sugar, please.

**Luna:** ¿Quiere leche con su café, señor?

**Luna:** You want milk with your coffee, sir?

**Jesús:** Sí, pero no mucha, solo un poco. Me gustaría pan con el café también.

**Jesús:** Yes, but not a lot, just a little bit. I would like bread with the coffee too.

**Luna:** No hay problema, suenan bien, ¿algo más? ¿Quiere algo para comer del menú?

**Luna:** No problem, sounds good, anything else? Do you

want something to eat from the menu?

**Jesús:** Hmmmm, me gustaría una ensalada. ¿Cuánto cuestan el arroz y el pollo? No tienen un precio.

**Jesús:** Hmmmm, I would like a salad. How much are the rice and chicken? It does not have a price.

**Luna:** Ohhh perdón, están aquí al reverso.

**Luna:** Ohhh sorry, they're here on the back.

**Jesús:** Ok, muy bien, me gustaría el arroz y el pollo, por favor.

**Jesús:** Okay, very well, I would like the rice and the chicken, please.

**Luna:** Ok, señor, vamos a preparar esto para usted ahora mismo. ¿Algo más?

**Luna:** Ok, sir, we are going to prepare this for you right now. Anything else?

**Jesús:** Eso es todo por ahora. Gracias por su excelente servicio.

**Jesús:** That's all for now. Thanks for your excellent service.

**Luna:** No hay problema, señor, es un placer. Buen provecho.

**Luna:** No problem, sir, it's a pleasure. Enjoy your meal.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

# BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Buenas tardes:** This is how you say good afternoon. It's "**Buenas**" and not, "**Buenos**" because the word, "**Tardes**" (afternoons/evenings) is feminine.

**Note:** In English you usually use the singular, but in Spanish, the plural is more common. In some places, you might hear the singular too. It is usually a matter of regional/personal preference.

Buenos días (plural)/Buen día (singular) = Good morning

How to Say **Good Morning and Good Night in Spanish:**

"**Buenos días**, señor. ¿Quiere desayunar?"

"**Good morning**, sir. Do you want some breakfast?"

"**Buenas tardes**, señora."

"**Good afternoon**, ma'am."

"**Buenas noches**. ¿Tiene reservación?"

"**Good evening**. Do you have a reservation?"

"**Buenas noches**, mamá. ¿Quieres algo de la tienda?"

"**Good night**, mom. You want something from the store?"

**Puedo ayudarle:** Puedo comes from the verb, "**Poder**" (to be able to/can do something). **Puedo** is the Yo form (first person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

So, let's talk about the next word, the infinitive/nonconjugated verb, "**Ayudar**". This verb means, "**To help**". Notice that she added the "**le**" to it?

That **le** is an indirect object pronoun.

The **le** is considered the third person, but she is talking directly to him (because, as you can see in the table below, it is used with the formal you, "**usted**"). An easy rule

of thumb when you're are speaking in the usted form is to pretend as if you're speaking about someone or something else.

**Le** can also be, "**him/her**".

If she was speaking using the "tú" form, she would have been more direct and said, "**Puedo ayudarte**" instead.

Here is a table of **Spanish indirect pronouns**.

| <u>Subject</u> | Singular                                       | Plural                                  |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| First person   | <b>me</b><br>(to/for me)                       | <b>nos</b><br>(to/for us)               |
| Second person  | <b>te</b><br>(to/for informal you)             | <b>os</b><br>(to/for formal you)        |
| Third person   | <b>le</b><br>(to/for it, him, her, formal you) | <b>les</b><br>(to/for them, formal you) |

I mentioned that she is speaking to him using the *usted/formal* form. If she was speaking to him using the *Tú* form, which pronoun you think she would have used?

I said before that she would have said, "**Puedo ayudarte**" instead, so it would have been "**te**".

This is how the verb, "**Poder**"(to be able to/can do something) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Puedo – I can

**Tú** Puedes - You can

**Él/ella** Puede – He/She can

**Usted** Puede- You (formal) can

**Nosotros/nosotras** Podemos – We can

**Ustedes** Pueden – You all can

**Ellos/ellas** Pueden -They can

**Vosotros** Podéis - You all (informal) can \*Only used in Spain

## Examples:

**"We can** *be friends.*"

**"Podemos** *ser amigos.*"

**"You can** *come with me.*"

**"Puedes** *venir conmigo.*"

And here is how the infinitive verb, "Ayudar" (to help) in the sentence is conjugated in the present indicative tense:

**Yo** Ayudo – I help

**Tú** Ayudas – You help

**Él/ella** Ayuda – He/she helps

**Usted** Ayuda - You (formal) help

**Nosotros/nosotras** Ayudamos – We help

**Ustedes** Ayudan - You all help

**Ellos/ellas** Ayudan – They help

**Vosotros** Ayudáis - You all (informal) help \*Only used in Spain.

And here are some **examples** of how to use "Ayudar" (to help) in the present indicative tense.

**"Quiero** *ayudar*"

**"I want** *to help*"

**"Quieren** *ayudarte*"

**"They want** *to help you*".

**"¿Puedes** *ayudarme?*"

**"Can you** *help me?*"

**"¿Puedes** *ayudarnos?*"

**"Can you** *help us?*"

Notice how the object pronouns, **te**, **me**, and **nos** are joined to the infinitive verb?

The cool thing is those object pronouns can also be placed before the conjugated verb.

For example, if you wanted to say “Can you help me”, it can be, “*Puedes ayudarme*” OR “*me puedes ayudar*”.

“*Nos puedes ayudar?*”.

“Can you help us?”

OR

“Can you help us.”

“Puedes ayudarnos.”

**Muchacha**: A Term that is used to address a young woman. *Muchacho* would be a young man. The young lady here is old enough to be referred to as, *senorita* as well.

You can use the word *muchacha/muchacho* for young people. If you say it to an older person, they may take offense to it. But when speaking, always remember, it's all about context.

Older people like to use the term, “*muchacha/muchacho*” a lot. So, someone in their 70s might use the word “*muchacho/a*” when referring to someone in his/her 20s, 30s or even 40s.

Old people aside, it is reasonable to call someone in his/her teens- 20s “*muchacho/a*”.

“*Muchacha*” can also mean “*cleaning lady/maid*”. Again, the context determines the meaning.

**Puedo ver**: The conjugated word, “*Puedo*” is from the verb, “*Poder*” (to be able to/can do something) and it's

used in the present indicative tense. “Ver” is the nonconjugated/infinite verb and it means, “To see”.

Making it, “I can see”(Puedo ver).

Again, this is how the verb “Poder”(to be able to/can do something) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Puedo – I can

**Tú** Puedes - You can

**Él/ella** Puede – He/She can

**Usted** Puede- You (formal) can

**Nosotros/nosotras** Podemos – We can

**Ustedes** Pueden – You all can

**Ellos/Ellas** Pueden – They can

**Vosotros** Podéis- You all (informal) can \*Only used in Spain

### Examples:

“**Podemos** ir a la playa.”

“**We can** go to the beach.”

“**Puedes** ver el cielo.”

“**You can** see the sky.”

“**Pueden** verte.”

“**They can** see you.”

See how the object pronoun “**te**” was added to the infinitive in this last example?

Remember it can also be, “**Te** pueden ver” and means the exact same thing.

It all depends on how you'd like to write/speak.

**No hay:** The word **hay** is super useful when you want to say, **there is, there are, is there, are there**. You may walk

into a supermarket, for example, and ask a person working there, “¿Hay manzanas aquí?” (Are there apples here?), they may simply respond, “**No hay**” (There aren't any) or they may say, “Yes, *there are apples*” (Sí, **hay** manzanas).

You'll hear “hay” when people say, “No **hay** problema” (no problem or there's no problem).

Where did it come from? The verb, “Haber”.

The verb “haber” is a very important auxiliary verb, meaning, “to have,” used with a past participle, as in, for example, “He has gone,” “Él ha ido.” (This is of course not to be confused with the regular transitive verb, “tener,” which means “to have.”)

**Example**, “I have a wife” (tengo una esposa).

But “haber” also has another meaning. It is the impersonal verb that means “to be,” used in a specific way, as in, for example, “**there is** rain,” “**Hay** lluvia.”

Notice that in the second example above, the word “hay” is used, (not “ha”). It is a special conjugation, used when “haber” is in its “to be” form in the present tense.

Furthermore, “hay” is used for both singular or plural nouns, that is, when saying “there is,” or “there are.”

As you advance with your Spanish, the verb “Haber” will be used to create all kind of sentences, no doubt about it, but in this version of Gritty Spanish, you'll not hear it used in all those forms, which is a good thing since this is meant to be a “Basic” version of Gritty Spanish.

**Other examples** of how to use “Hay”.

**"Hay** muchos carros en la calle."

**"There are** many cars on the street."

**"Hay** una bicicleta afuera."

**"There is** a bicycle outside."

Remember, you can use, "Hay" if you wanted to ask, "is there/are there" in Spanish too!

¿**Hay** un hotel en la ciudad?"

**Is there** a hotel in the city?"

¿**Hay** libros aquí?"

**Are there** books here?"

**Puede sentarse**: She is still speaking to him using a formal tone. She starts off with the verb, "Poder" (to be able to/can do something) and conjugated it to, "puede". "Puede is the 3<sup>rd</sup> person/Él/ella/usted form of the verb used in the present/indicative tense.

She then follows up with the infinitive/nonconjugated verb, "Sentar", which means, "to sit".

Notice that she added the "Se" at the end of the nonconjugated verb, "Sentar"?

Remember in the first story, when we were talking about the verb, "llamar" (to call) and how we can use it in a reflexive manner to say, "What you call yourself?/whats your name" or "¿Cómo te llamas?" in Spanish?

This is kind of using the same concept, "**Puede sentarse**" is like saying, "You can sit yourself down". But see, she is speaking to him in a formal manner, this is why she didn't say, "**Puedes sentarte**..."

When you're asking someone their name in a formal manner, you'd say, "¿Cómo se llama?" instead of "Cómo te llamas". When you say, "¿Cómo se llama?", it can also be, "What's his/her name".

Here is a list of reflexive pronouns with subjects...

Yo – **me**

Tú – **te**

Él, Ella, Usted – **se**

Nosotros – **nos**

Vosotros – **os**

Ellos, Ellas, Ustedes – **se**

Here, the young lady could have also used the reflexive pronoun first and said, "**Se puede sentar**". Makes sense?

**Le gustaría tomar:** You first heard the word, *gustaría* in the first conversation. We said that it means, ***I would like***. We also mentioned that is considered a bit more advanced Spanish, but it's important to talk about what you **WOULD like** even at the basic level.

Remember when we spoke about the verb "Gustar" (to be pleasing to) In the first conversation? This is the verb that word comes from.

So, if you want to say, "***I would like*** to see you", it's "***Me gustaría verte***".

Earlier, the girl said to the guy, "¿Puedo ayudar**le**?" (can I help you), speaking with a *usted/formal* tone.

She says, "***Le gustaría tomar algo....***" (would you like something...). So, you see she is doing the same thing using the object pronoun right? She chooses the singular form, "***le***" since she is speaking in the *usted* form. "***Le***" is neutral; in this case, she could also use "***lo***". ¿Puedo

ayudar**lo**? (because he is a man). If talking to a woman, she would have said ¿puedo ayudar**la**?

**lo** is the direct object meaning "him", or a masculine noun "it" or "you" **formal** in English.

**la** is the direct object meaning "her", or a feminine noun "it" or "you" **formal** in English.

Again, see the tables below.

### Direct object pronouns

A direct object pronoun replaces a direct object, which is a noun that directly receives the action of a verb in a sentence.

| Subject       | Singular                                    | Plural                                |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| First person  | <b>me</b><br>(me)                           | <b>nos</b><br>(us)                    |
| Second person | <b>te</b><br>(informal you)                 | <b>os</b><br>(informal you)           |
| Third person  | <b>lo, la</b><br>(it, him, her, formal you) | <b>los, las</b><br>(them, formal you) |

### Indirect object pronouns

An indirect object pronoun tells you to whom or for whom something is done.

| Subject       | Singular                                       | Plural                                  |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| First person  | <b>me</b><br>(to/for me)                       | <b>nos</b><br>(to/for us)               |
| Second person | <b>te</b><br>(to/for informal you)             | <b>os</b><br>(to/for formal you)        |
| Third person  | <b>le</b><br>(to/for it, him, her, formal you) | <b>les</b><br>(to/for them, formal you) |

If she was speaking in the *Tú* form, then she would have picked, “**Te**” and said, “**Te** gustaría tomar algo...”

After *Le gustaría*, she used the unconjugated verb, “*Tomar*”, which means, “*To drink*” or “*to take*”.

Here is how the verb is conjugated in the present indicative tense:

**Yo** Tomo – I drink

**Tú** Tomas – You drink

**Él/ella** Toma– He/she drinks

**Usted** Toma- You (formal) drink

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Tomamos – We drink

**Ustedes** Toman- you all drink

**Ellos/Ellas** Toman – They drink

**Vosotros** Tomáis- You all (informal) drink \*Only used in Spain

**Para beber**: First, let's talk about the nonconjugated verb, “*Beber*” (to drink). In the previous, we said that “*Tomar*” also means “*To drink*”. So, when you're talking about drinking, “*Beber*” is another verb you can use.

The word, “*Para*” here means, “*in order to*”. In other instances, “*Para*” can be, “*for*”. An example, “***Para mí***” (for me).

### Example:

“¿Vas a comprar el regalo **para mí**?”

“You gonna buy the gift **for me**?”

Perhaps one of the most challenging concepts for non-native Spanish-speakers to master is understanding when to use **por** and when to use **para**, both of which translate to **for** in English.

You can learn more about **por** and **para** [in this informative blog post](#) on the Gritty Spanish blog!

**Suena bien**: This is a good little phrase to use when you are in agreement with something, you can say, “Suena bien”(sounds good).

“Suena” comes from the verb, “Sonar”(to ring/to sound). Suena is the *él/ella/usted* form of the verb, the “third person” in the present indicative tense. The third person is what sounds good, it could be anything.

“Sounds good” can mean either “Suena bien” or “*me parece bien*”

“Sounds good to **me**” would not be different, it would also be “*me parece bien*”.

Here is how the verb, “Sonar”(to ring/to sound) is conjugated in the present indicative tense:

**Yo** Sueno - I sound

**Tú** Suenas - You (informal) sound

**Él/ella** Suena - He/she sounds

**Usted** Suena - You (formal) sound

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Sonamos - We sound

**Ustedes** Suenan - You (all) sound

**Ellos/ellas** Suenan - They sound

### Examples:

“**Suenas** como *mi madre*.”

“**You sound** like my mother.”

“Esa canción **suena** bien.”

“That song **sounds** good.”

**Cuánto cuestan**: The conjugated verb, “Cuestan” comes from the verb, “Costar”(to cost). Cuestan is the

*Ellos/ellas* form of the verb *Costar* used in the present indicative tense.

He was asking about the rice and chicken, which will make it plural. If he was only asking about the rice only, it would have been “*Cuánto cuesta*”. *Cuesta* is the *él/ella/usted* form of the verb *costar*.

This is how “*Costar*”(to cost) in the first person/indicative...

**Yo** Cuesto – I cost

**Tú** Cuestas – You (informal) cost

**Él/ella** Cuesta – She/he/it costs

**Usted** Cuesta – You(formal) cost

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Costamos – We cost

**Ustedes** Cuestan – They (all) cost

**Ellos/Ellas** Cuestan – They cost

### Examples:

“*La hamburguesa **cuesta** dos dólares.*”

“*The hamburger **costs** 2 dollars.*”

“*Cuánto **cuesta** hacer eso.*”

“*How much **does it cost** to make that.*”

**Vamos a preparar:** *Vamos* (we are going to) comes from the “*ir*” to go. “*Vamos*” is the *Nosotros/Nosotras* (first person plural) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

When you want to talk about what you or someone else is **going to do**, you can use the verb “*ir*”(to go). The infinitive/unconjugated verb is, “*Preparar*”(to prepare).

Use the following formula:

**Conjugated verb + a + an infinitive verb.**

## Examples:

**"Vamos a pagar la cuenta."**

**"We are going to pay the bill."**

**"¿Vas a beber ahora?"**

**"You going to drink now?"**

**Buen Provecho:** You're guaranteed to hear this phrase when you're about to eat. A Spanish-speaking native will say, "Buen Provecho"...

You'll hear this phrase used in a restaurant or right before dining, someone will say it.

Heck, I've even heard it after buying a regular ham and cheese sandwich from the corner Bodega in NYC.

It's a way of communicating that you hope the person you're talking to enjoys their meal.

Some native English-speaking people will say the French phrase, "Bon appétit".

"Buen provecho" is something like that.

## SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Ordering food in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Tu vs usted – What's the difference](#)
- ✓ [Spanish food vocabulary](#)
- ✓ [Dessert names in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

## Quizzes for Episode 2

[Click](#) on image below to access!



## Episode 3: Hotel Reservation



### **Synopsis:**

After a long flight, Alejandro walks into the lobby of a hotel in South America. He introduces himself to the receptionist. The two speak about his reservation, he asks about WiFi and other accommodations. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gitty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

*\*Un hombre con su equipaje entra al área de recepción de un hotel\**

*\*A man with his luggage enters a hotel's reception area\**

**Recepcionista:** Hola y buenas tardes, señor. ¿Cómo está usted hoy?

**Receptionist:** Hello and good afternoon, sir. How are you doing today?

**Alejandro:** Buenas tardes a usted también. Ay, fue un vuelo largo, necesito descansar, pero estoy bien. Y usted, ¿cómo está?

**Alejandro:** Good afternoon to you as well. Ahh, it was a long flight, I need to rest, but I am fine. And you, how are you?

**Recepcionista:** Estoy bien, entiendo cómo es esto. ¿Tiene una reservación con nosotros? ¿Puede darme su nombre, por favor? Voy a necesitar su nombre y apellido.

**Receptionist:** I am fine, I understand how it is. Do you have a reservation with us? Can you give me your name, please? I am going to need your first and last name.

**Alejandro:** Sí, tengo una reservación. Mi nombre es Alejandro y mi apellido es Vargas.

**Alejandro:** Yes, I have a reservation. My first name is Alejandro and my last name is Vargas.

**Recepcionista:** Está bien, grandioso. Voy a buscar su nombre en nuestro sistema. Deme un momento, por favor.

**Receptionist:** Okay, great. I am going to look for your name in our system. Give me a second, please.

*\*La recepcionista busca su nombre en la computadora\**

*\*The receptionist searches his name in the computer\**

**Recepcionista:** No puedo encontrar su nombre en nuestra computadora, señor. ¿Tiene un numero de reservación?

**Receptionist:** I can't find your name in our computer sir. Do you have a reservation number?

**Alejandro:** ¡Esto es absurdo! El número de reservación es cinco – cuatro- uno.

**Alejandro:** This is absurd! The reservation number is 5-4-1.

**Recepcionista:** Gracias, señor Vargas. La veo ahora. Está en la habitación dos – tres- nueve.

**Receptionist:** Thank you, Mr. Vargas. I see it now. You're in room 2-3-9.

**Alejandro:** ¡Grandioso! ¿La habitación tiene Wi-Fi?

**Alejandro:** Great! Does the room have Wi-Fi?

**Recepcionista:** Claro que sí. Su habitación está muy cerca de la piscina. Allí, el Wi-Fi es muy fuerte.

**Receptionist:** Of course. Your room is very close to the pool. There, the Wi-Fi is very strong.

**Alejandro:** ¡Fantástico! Me alegra oír eso. La habitación también tiene una cocina, ¿verdad?

**Alejandro:** Fantastic! I am glad to hear that. The room also has a kitchen, right?

**Recepcionista:** Sí, tiene una cocina, un área pequeña para cocinar y también, un escritorio para su computadora.

**Receptionist:** Yes, it has a kitchen, a small area for cooking and also, a desk for your computer.

**Alejandro:** Esa es una buena noticia.

**Alejandro:** That is great news.

**Recepcionista:** Sí, es una buena habitación, señor. Es muy grande, limpia y todo está listo para usted. Aquí están sus llaves tradicionales. También, tenemos una llave electrónica.

**Receptionist:** Yes, it's a good room, sir. It's very big, clean and everything is ready for you. Here are your traditional keys. Also, we have a key card.

**Alejandro:** Ah, es muy útil tener las dos. Una pregunta, ¿cuál es la contraseña para el Wi-Fi?

**Alejandro:** Ah, it's very useful to have both. Question, what is the password for the Wi-Fi?

**Recepcionista:** Aquí tiene, [voy a escribirla](#) para usted.

**Receptionist:** Here you go, I am going to write it down for you.

**Alejandro:** Ok, gracias por todo.

**Alejandro:** Okay, thanks for everything.

**Receptionist:** Estamos para servirle. Puede llamarme si necesita cualquier cosa. Disfrute su estancia, Sr. Vargas.

**Receptionist:** At your service. You can call me if you need anything. Enjoy your stay, Mr. Vargas.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Entiendo:** *Entiendo* means, “I understand” and it comes from the verb, “*Entender*” (to understand). “*Entiendo*” is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

When speaking to a Spanish-speaking person who does not understand something that was said, they'll answer, “*no entiendo*” (I don't understand) and you can do the same.

This is how *Entender* (to understand) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Entiendo – I understand

**Tú** Entiendes – You understand

**Él/Ella** Entiende - He/he/it understands

**Usted** Entiende – You (formal) understand

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Entendemos – We understand

**Ustedes** Entienden - You all understand

**Ellos/Ellas** Entienden – They understand

**Examples:**

“¿**Entiendes** inglés?”

“**Do you understand** English?”

"Quiero **entender** inglés mejor."

"I want **to understand** English better."

"¿**Entienden** mi español?"

"**Do they understand** my Spanish?"

**Puede darme:** The receptionist is speaking using the formal/usted form, so she uses the Él/ella/usted form of the verb, "poder"(to be able to/can do something), "Puede".

After this, she says, "Darme"(to give me). "Dar" is a verb that means, "to give". Her adding the "**me**" to the verb, makes the complete thing, "Can you give **me**".

She then added, "**Su** nombre"(your name). Of course, still speaking formally, this is why she is not saying, "**Tu** nombre".

This is how the verb, "Dar"(to give) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Doy – I give

**Tú** Das – You give

**Él/ella** Da - He/she/it gives

**Usted** Da – You (formal) give

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Damos – We give

**Ustedes** Dan- You (all) give

**Ellos/Ellas** Dan – They give

### Examples:

"**Te doy** el dinero mañana."

"**I give you** the money tomorrow."

"**Voy a darte** dinero mañana."

"**I am going to give you** money tomorrow."

**Tengo:** Tengo (I have) comes from the verb, "Tener" (to have).

*Tengo* is the *Yo* form (first person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Some people will add the subject pronoun, “*Yo*” in front of a conjugated verb, but you don't have to.

You can just say, “*Tengo una reservación*”(I have a reservation).

Remember, “*Tengo*” is already the *Yo* form of the verb, so no need to say, “**Yo** *tengo*”, but you'll be understood perfectly if you used the pronoun.

For example, in a 1 on 1 conversation, it is not necessary at all to say “**yo** *tengo una reservación*” because it sounds a little redundant.

Saying “*tengo una reservación*” is more than enough.

But if you're amongst a group of people in the lobby, and the receptionist asks “*Who has a reservation?*”

Then it would be perfectly normal to say:

“*Yo tengo una reservación*” (Or simply just “*yo*”).

Here is the verb, “*Tener*”(to have) conjugated in the present indicative tense:

**Yo** *Tengo* – I have

**Tú** *Tienes* – You have

**Él/Ella** *Tiene* - He/She has

**Usted** *Tiene* – You (formal) have

**Nosotros/Nosotras** *Tenemos* – We have

**Ustedes** *Tienen*- You all have

**Ellos/Ellas** *Tienen* – They have

**Grandioso:** You can also say “*genial*” for the word “*great*”, but this conversation sounds slightly formal. So “*grandioso*” would be more appropriate in this context. “*Genial*” is just more informal.

You could even use “*Excelente*”, “*Maravilloso*”, or “*Fantástico*”. Those are not direct translations of “*great*”, but you can use them as well when someone tells you something and you’re satisfied and would like to show some level of excitement in your response.

**Me alegra oír eso:** In “*me alegra*”, we are conjugating the verb “*alegrar*”, which means “*make happy*”.

Yo me alegra = I make me happy

Tú te alegras = You make you happy

Él/ella se alegra = He/she makes himself/herself happy

Usted se alegra = You (formal) make yourself happy

Nosotros nos alegramos = We make ourselves happy

Ustedes se alegran = You all make yourself happy

Ellos/ellas se alegran = They make themselves happy

Now, when you say “*me alegra*”, something else is making you happy.

**Example:**

“*Me alegra saber que estás bien.*”

“*I am glad to know that you are OK.*”

Another way to think about this could be:

"Me alegra oír eso."

"It pleases me to hear that."

**Deme**: This word comes from the verb, "Dar" (to give).

If you ever want to tell someone a command and say, "Give me", then it would be, "Dame" (tú form, informal) or "Deme" ("usted" form, formal).

Spanish verbs have a mood called *the Imperative*. It's used to give affirmative and negative commands.

**A mood** is a grammatical term which helps categorize verb tenses. Spanish has 3 moods: indicative, imperative, and subjunctive. Tense refers when an action takes place (past, present, future), while mood merely reflects how the speaker feels about the action.

For example, if you want to just tell someone, "Speak", you'd use the imperative mood of that verb and just say, "Habla", which is the *tú* form. The *usted* form would be, *hable*.

The receptionist said, "Deme" which is from the *usted* command of *Dar* and she just added the "me" to it.

If you'd like to learn more about the command/imperative mood, you may [\*\*check out this blog post\*\*](#) on the Gritty Spanish blog.

**La veo**: To say, "I see" in Spanish, is, "Veo". This comes from the verb, "Ver"(to see). Veo is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Instead of saying, "Veo la reservación"(I see the reservation), which would have been fine as well, she says, "I see **it**" to avoid sounding repetitive.

So that “*la*” represents the feminine word, “**La** reservación”. She also could have said, “**Lo** veo”(I see it) if she was referring to a masculine item.

In this case, she could have meant, “*The reservation number*”(El número de reservación).

**Estamos para servirle:** This literally means, “we are here to serve you”. The word, “*Estamos*” (We are) is from the verb, “*Estar*”(to be). *Estamos* is the *Nosotros/Nosotras* form of the verb. It’s first-person plural form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

She then used the word, “*Para*” which means, “for” or “in order to”.

After the unconjugated verb, “**servir**” was used, which means, “to serve”. She then adds “*le*” to that verb, making it, “**servirle**”(to serve **him/her**) literally, but if she was using the informal “*tú*”, she would have said, “*Estamos para servirte*”.

**Puede llamarme:** Great line to use if you want to ask someone to call you, “*Puede llamarme*”. Or if you want to say this informally, it’s “**Puedes llamarme**”. You can also remove that “**me**” and put it in the front of the conjugated verb and say, “**me** puedes llamar”.

First, she used the conjugated form of the verb, “*poder*”(to be able to/can do something). She used the 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb, “*puede*” in the present indicative tense.

**Disfrute su estancia:** *Disfrute* is another command. The command form was mentioned earlier. The verb, “*disfrutar*” means, “To enjoy”. You can tell someone to,

"Enjoy" as a command in the **tú** form of the verb to make it, "*disfruta*".

So, if you have a friend of yours going to a party, you can just tell them, "*Disfruta la fiesta*" (enjoy the party) Saying just "*disfruta*" might sound incomplete, though. ¿*Disfruta qué?* (Enjoy what?).

Here, the receptionist says, "*Disfrute*", which is the command form of the verb, "*Disfrutar*" (to enjoy), but it's in the "*Usted*" form.

**Su** is the formal, "your". If it was informal it would be, "*tu*".

The word **estancia** just means, "Stay".

**Voy a necesitar**: *Voy* (I am going to) comes from the verb "*ir*" to go. "*Voy*" is the *yo form* (first person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

When you want to talk about what you're going to do, you can use the verb "*ir*". The infinitive/unconjugated verb here is, "*necesitar*" (to need).

To talk about what you or someone else is going to do, use this formula:

**Conjugated verb** (*ir*) + **a** + an **infinitive verb**.

**Examples:**

"**Voy** a dormir todo el día."

"**I am going** to sleep all day."

"**Ella va** a comprar un nuevo auto."

"**She is going** to buy a new car."

“**Juan va** a escribir un poema.”

“**John is going** to write a poem.”

**Voy a escribirla**: “Voy a escribirla” has the same formula as above, but a “la” was added to the verb “escribir”. This is because she is talking about “**la contraseña**” (**the** password), which is a feminine noun.

**Conjugated verb (ir) + a + an infinitive verb with direct object pronoun (third person singular).**

Voy a escribirla

If we were talking about a masculine noun, for example “**el código**” (**the** code), this would be

Voy a escribirlo.

| Subject       | Singular                                    | Plural                                |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| First person  | <b>me</b><br>(me)                           | <b>nos</b><br>(us)                    |
| Second person | <b>te</b><br>(informal you)                 | <b>os</b><br>(informal you)           |
| Third person  | <b>lo, la</b><br>(it, him, her, formal you) | <b>los, las</b><br>(them, formal you) |

## SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Phrases for checking into hotels in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Uses of the verb “ir” in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Reserving a hotel in Spanish](#)

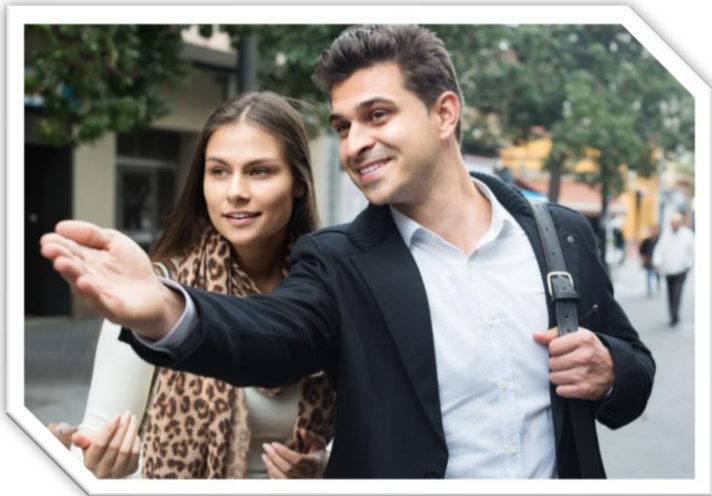
([Back to episode list](#))

 **Quizzes for Episode 3**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



## Episode 4: Directions



### **Synopsis:**

Camila is out in the street, heading to a clothing store but she is a bit lost. She stops Juan and asks him for directions. This episode will help you when you're out and about in a Spanish-speaking country and need some help getting where you have to go. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Camila:** Hola señor, discúlpame. Estoy buscando una tienda de ropa, pero no puedo encontrar la tienda.

**Camila:** Hi sir, excuse me. I am looking for a clothing store, but I can't find the store.

**Juan:** Puedo ayudar. ¿Cuál es el nombre de la tienda? ¿Sabes la dirección?

**John:** I can help. What is the name of the store? Do you know the address?

**Camila:** El nombre de la tienda es "Fabulosa"; está en la calle doce.

**Camila:** The name of the store is called "fabulous"; It's located on twelve street.

**Juan:** Ah, conozco esa tienda muy bien, mi madre siempre hace compras allá. Está aproximadamente a media hora de aquí.

**John:** Ah, I know that store very well, my mom always shops there. It's approximately half an hour away from here.

**Camila:** ¿Dónde queda exactamente? ¿Cómo llego allá?

**Camila:** Where is it located exactly? How do I get there?

**Juan:** Bueno, puedes tomar un Uber para allá, si quieres. ¿Tienes la aplicación de Uber en tu teléfono?

**John:** Well, you can take an Uber there if you want. Do you have the app for Uber in your Phone?

**Camila:** No uso Uber; ¿puedo tomar el autobús? Prefiero tomar el autobús.

**Camila:** I don't use Uber; can I take the bus? I prefer to take the bus.

**Juan:** Sí, claro... Puedes tomar el autobús número catorce en la próxima manzana.

**John:** Yes, of course... You can take the number fourteen bus on the next block.

**Camila:** ¿Tengo que cruzar la calle y caminar para llegar allí?

**Camila:** Do I have to cross the street and walk there?

**Juan:** Así es. Puedes preguntarle al conductor del autobús también.

**John:** That's right. You can ask the bus driver too.

**Camila:** Entiendo. Gracias por tu ayuda.

**Camila:** Got it. Thanks for your help!

**Juan:** No hay problema, de nada.

**John:** No problem, you're welcome.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Discúlpame:** If you're out and about and wanted to tell someone, "Excuse me", you'd say, "*discúlpame*". You can also say, "*disculpa*" (informal) or "*disculpe*" (formal).

Where does this come from?

Let's break it down.

Let's start with the verb, "*Discupar*"(to forgive/to excuse).

She is using a command, "*Excuse*" in the present tense, so she says, "*Discupla*", but added the "Me" to it, making it, "*discúlpame*"(excuse me.)

This can also mean, "*forgive me*".

You can read [this blog post](#) on the Gitty Spanish blog to learn a little bit about the command form in Spanish.

**Estoy buscando**: *Estoy* comes from the verb, "*Estar*"(to be). *Estoy* is the Yo form (First-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense. "*Estoy buscando*" means, "*I am searching for*".

Let's talk a little bit about the word, "*Buscando*". It means, "*Looking for/searching for*".

It comes from the verb, "*buscar*"(to look for/to search for).

You know when we say in English, "*Search-ING*" or "*Look-ING*"? This is a great example of using the Present Participle, *Busca-ndo*. This more advanced Spanish than you'll see in this version of Gitty Spanish, but still good to keep in the back of your mind.

The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs. Study the following chart to see how most present participles are formed:

**AR**

drop the - **ar**

and add - **ando**

**ER**

drop the - **er**

and add  
- **iendo** \*

**IR**

drop the - **ir**

and add - **iendo** \*

**Examples:**

bail **er** =  
bail **ando**

com **er** =  
com **iendo**

decid **ir** =  
decid **iendo**

habl **er** =  
habl **ando**

hac **er** =  
hac **iendo**

abr **ir** = abr **iendo**

**No puedo encontrar:** The “no” here, of course makes it negative statement. *Puedo* comes from the verb, “Poder”(to be able to/can do something). It’s conjugated using the “Yo” form (First-person singular) of the verb in the present indicative tense. “Puedo” by itself means, “I can”, “No puedo” means, “I can’t”.

The unconjugated verb, “Encontrar” means, “to find”.

So, together, it means, “I can’t find”.

**Sabes:** This means, “You know”. The word, “Sabes”, comes from the verb, “Saber”(to know). *Sabes* is the *Tú* form (Second-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Here is how the verb, “Saber”(to know) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Sé – I know

**Tú** Sabes – You know

**Él/Ella** Sabe- He/She /knows

**Usted** Sabe – You (formal) know

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Sabemos – We understand

**Ustedes** Saben- You all know

**Ellos/Ellas** Saben – They know

### **Examples:**

*"Yo sé su nombre."*

*"I know his name."*

*"¿Eres de Perú?"*

*"Are you from Peru?"*

The verb, *Saber* is used to talk about facts or learned skills. You can use it to talk about information you've memorized or to say you know how to swim, draw, speak a language, etc.

There is another verb that means, "To know" in Spanish, it's "Conocer". *Conocer* is used to express familiarity or acquaintance (or lack thereof) with a person, place, or thing. For example, you can know, or be acquainted with a book, a movie, a country, or a certain person.

### **Examples:**

*"Conozco a tu hermano."*

*"I know your brother."*

*"No me conoces."*

*"You don't know me."*

*"¿Me conoces?"*

*"Do you know me?"*

[\*\*This very helpful post\*\*](#) on our Gritty Spanish blog will help you understand the difference between the verbs "Saber" and "Conocer".

**Dónde queda:** The word, “Dónde” means, “Where”. The word, “Queda” comes from the verb, “Quedar”(to stay). *Queda* is the 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular/usted (formal second person singular) form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

*Quedar* is one of the Spanish verbs that has so many different meanings depending on context, and this is one of them.

**Llego:** *Llego* comes from the verb, “Llegar”(to arrive). *Llego* is the “yo” form (First-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

If you ever want to ask someone, “*how do I get there*”, you can say what the character said, “*Cómo llego allá*”, it's like saying, “*How do I arrive there*”, no?

Here is how the verb, “Llegar”(to arrive) is conjugated in the present indicative tense in Spanish:

**Yo** Llego – I arrive

**Tú** Llegas – You arrive

**Él/Ella** Llega – He/she/arrives

**Usted** Llega- You (formal) arrive

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Llegamos – We arrive

**Ustedes** Llegan- You all arrive

**Ellos/Ellas** Llegan – They arrive

Looking at the conjugation above, to say, “How do **THEY** get there” will be, “Como **llegan** allá”.

Remember, you can use the word, “allá” or “Allí” when you want to say “There” or “over there”.

In theory, “*allá*” implies/denotes a greater distance, but in practice, they are often used interchangeably. There are also regional preferences.

**Puedes tomar:** In the previous episode, we said that the verb, “*Tomar*” means, “*to drink*” but we also mentioned that it also means, “*to take*”. So, you can use that verb as well, when giving directions.

### Examples:

“**You take** a bus *allá*.”

“**Tomas** un autobus there.”

“**Podemos** tomar un autobús mañana.”

“**We can** take a bus tomorrow.”.

**Tengo que cruzar:** When you’re speaking or writing in Spanish, and want to express having to do something, you can use the verb, “*Tener*” (to have).

So here, the character uses the following formula....

### Conjugated verb + **que** + a nonconjugated verb.

So the conjugated verb is, *tengo* (I have).

Then, he used the word, “*Que*”... Followed by the nonconjugated verb, “*cruzar*” (to cross).

### Here are other examples:

“**Tengo que comprar** algo para mi esposa.”

“**I have to buy** something for my wife.”

“**Tienes que estar** allí.”

“**You have to be** there.”

"No puedo hablar contigo; **tengo que ir** a la casa de mi madre."

"I can't talk with you; **I have to go** to my mom's house."

**Entiendo:** *Entiendo* means, "I understand" and it comes from the verb, "*Entender*" (to understand). "*Entiendo*" is the Yo form (First-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

When speaking to a Spanish-speaking person who does not understand something, they'll say, "*no entiendo*" (I don't understand). You'll also say this as well when you don't understand something.

This is how *Entender* (to understand) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Entiendo- I understand

**Tú** Entiendes- You understand

**Él/ella** Entiende- He/she understands

**Usted** Entiende- You (formal) understand

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Entendemos- We understand

**Ustedes** Entienden- You all understand

**Ellos/Ellas** Entienden – They understand

### Examples:

"¿**Entiendes** inglés?"

"**You understand** English?"

"Quiero **entender** inglés mejor"

"I want **to understand** English better"

"¿**Entienden** mi español?"

"**Do they understand** my Spanish?"



- ✓ [Asking for Directions in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Tener Que vs Hay Que vs Deber](#)
- ✓ [Different ways to say I don't understand in Spanish](#)

## **Quizzes for Episode 4**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 5: Bad Weather



## Synopsis:

After a heavy snowstorm in the city, Alphonso and his wife look outside their window, contemplating whether they should go to work or not. The two discuss the weather conditions and their impact on their daily routine. In this episode, you'll learn how to talk about different weather patterns, seasons, and more. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

*\*\* Alphonso mira por la ventana \*\**

*\*\*Alphonso looks out his window\*\**

**Alphonso:** Guau, [mira](#) este clima. Mira toda esa nieve afuera.

**Alphonso:** Wow, look at this weather. Look at all this snow outside.

**Paola:** Lo sé, de verdad, no quiero ir al trabajo en este clima. No quiero ir afuera, ¡se ve horrible! Voy a quedarme adentro.

**Paola:** I know, I don't really want to go to work in this weather. I don't want to go outside, it looks horrible! I am going to stay inside.

**Alphonso:** Yo tampoco, ¿cuál es el pronóstico? ¿Viste las noticias esta mañana? ¿Cuál es la temperatura hoy?

**Alphonso:** Me neither, what's the forecast? Did you watch the news this morning? What's the temperature today?

**Paola:** Dicen que estamos a siete grados hoy y, en la noche, vamos a estar a temperaturas bajo cero.

**Paola:** They say that it's 7 degrees today and, in the night, it's going to be below zero degrees.

**Alphonso:** Ay no. Bueno, por lo menos mañana va a ser un día soleado.

**Alphonso:** Oh no. Well, at least tomorrow it's going to be a sunny day.

**Paola:** Sí, solo ventoso. Extraño Colombia, siempre hace calor en mi país.

**Paola:** Yes, just windy. I miss Colombia, it's always hot in my country.

**Alphonso:** Precisamente, siempre hace calor. Vamos a visitar Colombia el año que viene. Entonces, ¿cuál es tu clima favorito?

**Alphonso:** Precisely, it is always hot. We are going to visit Colombia next year. So, what is your favorite weather?

**Paola:** Hmm, ¿mi favorito? Bueno, me encanta la lluvia; me encanta escuchar el sonido de agua. De las estaciones, prefiero el verano, pero me encanta la primavera. No me gusta el otoño. Yo odio el invierno, pero me gusta la nieve.

**Paola:** Hmm, my favorite? Well, I love the rain; I love listening to the sound of water. For the seasons, I prefer the summer, but I love the spring. I don't like autumn. I hate the winter, but I like the snow.

**Alphonso:** Qué bien, pero me encanta otoño. También, me gusta el clima nublado; no sé por qué. No me gusta la lluvia, pero, me gusta verla.

**Alphonso:** Nice, but I love autumn. I also like cloudy weather; I don't know why. I don't like the rain, but I like to see it.

**Paola:** La lluvia, tenemos algo en común. Las nubes, hmmm, no estoy segura de eso. Bueno, ¡tenemos que ir afuera y jugar en la nieve!

**Paola:** The rain, we have something in common. Clouds, hmmm, I don't know about that. Well, we have to go outside and play in the snow!

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Mira:** I know for a fact that you've heard a Spanish-speaking person say this word a thousand times, "*mira*". They'll say it when showing another person something or to get someone's attention.

*Mira*, comes from the verb, "*Mirar*" (to look) and it's the command/imperative mood of the verb.

"*Mira*" is the "*tú*" form (Informal second-person singular) of that verb in this mood.

Remember, the *imperative mood* is used to tell someone to do something in a direct manner. More simply put, sentences in the imperative mood are commands.

So anytime you're talking to someone and want to point something out to that person, just say, "*mira*".

**Se ve:** Let's start with the word, "*Ve*", which comes from the verb, "*ver*"(to see). Here, it's used in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular or *Él/ella*; and *usted* form. They are talking about the weather condition, so that makes it the 3<sup>rd</sup> "*person*" or *él/ella/usted* form...

*Se* is the reflexive pronoun. "*Se ve*" can be, "*it looks*", but then she said after, "*Horrible*", making it, "*It looks horrible*".

That "*it*" can also be another person if they were actually talking about someone else.

This is a great way to talk about what a person looks like.

## Examples:

**"Te ves** como tu hermana."

**"You look** like your sister."

**"Ella se ve** como Jennifer Lopez."

**"She looks** like Jennifer Lopez."

**"Me veo** horrible."

**"I look** horrible."

**Viste**: This is one of the first times seeing the **preterite past tense** being used in this version of Gritty Spanish. The verb, "Ver" (to see/to watch) is being used in the preterite past tense here.

"Viste" is the *Tú* form (Informal second-person singular) of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense. If I said, "You see" in the present tense, it's, "Ves".

Preterite tense forms is used to describe actions completed at a point in the past. The Spanish preterite is not used to describe habitual or continuous actions in the past with no specific beginning or end. In such cases, the imperfect tense is used.

You can learn more about the preterite and imperfect tense in **[this Blog Post on the Gritty Spanish blog!](#)**

Here is how the verb, "Ver" (to see/to watch) is conjugated in the preterite tense...

**Yo** Vi – I saw

**Tú** Viste – You saw

**Él/Ella** Vio– He/she saw

**Usted** Vio- You (formal) saw

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Vimos – We saw

**Ustedes** Vieron- You all saw

**Ellos/ellas** Vieron – They saw

### Examples:

*"**Vi** un gato ayer."*

*"**I saw** a cat yesterday."*

*"¿**Me viste** con una chica ayer?"*

*"**You saw me** with a girl yesterday?"*

*"**Me vieron** en el supermercado hace dos semanas."*

*"**They saw me** in the supermarket 2 weeks ago."*

*"**Vimos** a Carmen anoche."*

*"**We saw** Carmen last night."*

**Estamos a siete grados:** As English speakers, we may have the tendency to say "va a estar" (it's going to be), but when talking about temperature in Spanish, it's a bit different.

When talking about the temperature, there are specific ways of expressing it.

It's not possible to use a word for word translation.

It is "**X**" degrees today = Estamos a "**X**" grados hoy.

This is by far the most common one.

*Estamos* (we are) is from the verb, "*Estar*" (to be). *Estamos* is the *Nosotros/Nosotras* form (First-person plural) of the verb used in the present indicative tense. In our minds, it's like literally saying, "**We are at X degrees today**" right?

### Other options:

- Hace una temperatura de “x” grados hoy
- La temperatura es de “x” grados
- Hace “x” grados (less common, might sound incorrect or unfamiliar in some regions).

**Vamos a estar a temperaturas bajo cero:** Same with this one, we may have the tendency to say, “*va a estar baja cero grados*”, but we can't get away with this when talking about temperature in Spanish.

You can also say the following:

- Estaremos a “x” grados bajo cero (*if you know the exact temperature*)
- Las temperaturas descenderán bajo cero
- La temperatura caerá por debajo de cero

I personally prefer the one we used in the conversation.

**Extraño:** This word comes from the verb, “*Extrañar*” (to miss). *Extraño* is the “Yo” form (First-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Here is how it is conjugated in the present indicative tense:

**Yo** Extraño – I miss

**Tú** Extrañas – You miss

**Él/ella** Extraña – He/she misses

**Usted** Extraña- You (formal) miss

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Extrañamos – We miss

**Ustedes** Extrañan - You all miss

**Ellos/ellas** Extrañan – They miss

**Examples:**

“¿**Extrañas** a tu novia?”

“**You miss** your girlfriend?”

“Te extraño.”

“I miss you.”

“**Extrañan** a su madre.”

“**They miss** their mom.”

“**Extraño** mi pueblo.”

“I miss my hometown.”

I just had to put this last example in there. When I didn't know much Spanish, one song I discovered and I kept listening to it over and over again was a song by Batchata legend, Frank Reyes, it's called, “Extraño mi pueblo”.

I had sent out an email to Gitty Spanish subscribers about it once upon a time.

You can [listen to the song and download the side by side lyrics here!](#)

**Hace calor:** When describing the weather in Spanish, you can say the following:

- It's hot: Hace calor
- It's a hot day: Es un día caluroso

\* be careful, avoid saying “**es un día caliente**”, which is a very common mistake.

- It's cold: Hace frío
- It's nice weather: Hace buen tiempo
- It's very bad weather: Hace muy mal tiempo
- It's sunny: Hace sol/Está soleado

You can learn some weather expressions in [this post](#) on the Gritty Spanish blog.

**El año que viene**: When talking about *next year*, you can say, "*el año que viene*". This literally means, "*The year that comes*". You also use it to say "*next week*" (*La semana que viene*).

The last word, "*viene*" is the 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular (*Él/Ella*) and formal second-person singular (*Usted*) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

You'll also hear/read, "*el proximo año*" when talking about next year. This literally means, "*The next year*".

If you want to say next week, you can say, "*La próxima semana*", *next month*, "*El próximo mes*" and so on.

Both are commonly used, so go with the one you're most comfortable with.

\*You might also hear the following:

"*El año que entra*", "*La semana que entra*", "*El mes que entra*".

**Me encanta escuchar**: If you want to say, "*I love it*", you can say, "*me encanta*". *Encanta* is the present indicative tense of the verb "*encantar*" (to love) and "*me*" is the pronoun.

*Me encanta* can be used to express "love" in the sense of liking something a whole heck of a lot. This conveys a strong feeling but is not as serious as love.

The verb "*Escuchar*" means, "*To listen*", making it, "*I love to listen*".

**No me gusta**: When you don't like something, you can

simply say, “No me gusta”. This literally means, “It’s not pleasing to me”. If you don’t like a song, you can say, “No me gusta la canción”(I don’t like the song).

“Gusta” comes from the verb, “Gustar”(to be pleasing to /to like). *Gusta* is the third-person singular(*Él/Ella*) and *Usted* form of the verb when it’s conjugated in the present indicative tense. It is also the informal second-person singular (*tú*) affirmative imperative form of this verb, “Gustar”.

### Examples:

“**No me gusta** el pescado.”  
“**I don’t like** fish.”

“**No les gusta** el programa.”  
“**They don’t like** the program.”

“**Me gustan** los gatos.”  
“**I like** cats.”

“**Me gusta** comer mucho.”  
“**I like** to eat a lot.”

“**No me gusta** su comportamiento.”  
“**I don’t like** his/her/their behavior.”

**Yo odio:** The word, “Odio” comes from the verb, “Odiar”(to hate). The *Yo* form (First-person singular) of the verb is used in the present indicative tense here.

Remember, it wasn’t necessary that the character used the pronoun, *Yo*. She could have just said, “Odio el invierno”, either way is correct, but more times than not, you’ll see people excluding the subject pronoun since the conjugated verb already contains it.

Here is how the verb is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Odio – I hate

**Tú** Odias – You hate

**Él/ella/** Odia – He/She hates

**Usted** Odia- You (formal) hate

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Odiamos – We hate

**Ustedes** Odian- You all hate

**Ellos/Ellas** Odian – They hate

### Examples:

**“Odio** ir allá.”

**“I hate** going there.”

**“¿Por qué odias** hablar con ella?”

**“Why you hate** talking to her?”

**“¡Te odio!”**

**“I hate you!”**

**Me gusta verla**: When talking about something you or someone else *likes/or don't* like in Spanish, you'll say either, “No me gusta” or simply, “Me gusta” if you like.

“Gusta” comes from the verb, “Gustar” (to be pleasing to). Gusta is the 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular, *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb when it's conjugated in the present indicative tense. It is also the informal second-person singular (tú) affirmative imperative form of this verb, “Gustar”.

He didn't stop at, “Me gusta”, he added the verb, “Ver”, with means, “To see”. Notice he added the “**la**” at the end?

Do you know what the “**la**” represents?

It represents, “**La** Lluvia”. He could have easily said, “Me gusta ver **la lluvia**” (I like to see the rain). He was talking about it already, so instead of repeating the word, he just said “it”. It is **la** because the word, “**Lluvia**” is *feminine*.

If he was talking about a woman, and said, “*me gusta ver**la***”, that would be translated to, “*I like to see her*”.

If this was a masculine noun, such as “**el viento**” (**the** wind), he could have said something like:

-Me gusta sentir el viento (I like the feel the wind); or

-Me gusta sentir**lo** (I like to feel **it**).

### SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Seasons in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Weather expressions in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Expressing likes and dislikes in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Talking about natural disasters in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Winter clothes Spanish vocabulary](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### Quizzes for Episode 5

[Click](#) on image below to access!



## Episode 6: Meet my Son



### Synopsis:

While in a public park, Adriana introduces her 4-year-old son, Miguel to her good friend Roberto. The two engage in some basic conversation. Roberto is amazed at how intelligent and sarcastic he is to be so young. ([Back to episode list](#))

[Click here to learn more and purchase the audio!](#)

**Adriana:** Oye, Roberto, [me gustaría presentarte](#) a mi hijo. [Se llama](#) Miguel.

**Adriana:** Hey, Roberto, I would like to introduce you to my son, his name is Miguel.

**Roberto:** Hola, ¿[Miguelito](#), como te va? [Dime](#), ¿cuántos años tienes?

**Robert:** Hi little Miguel, how's it going? Tell me, how old are you?

**Miguel:** Estoy bien gracias, ¿y usted? Bueno, tengo cuatro años. ¿Cuántos años tiene señor?

**Miguel:** I am fine thanks, and you. Well, I am 4 years old. How old are you sir?

**Roberto:** Jajaja, eres demasiado inteligente para mí muchacho, jajaja.

**Robert:** Hahaha, you're too intelligent for me kid, hahaha.

**Miguel:** Pues, solo es una pregunta inocente. ¿Cuál es el problema?

**Miguel:** Well, it's just an innocent question. What's the problem?

**Roberto:** Jajaja, Dios mío. Ya es un hombre.

**Robert:** Hahaha, oh my God. He is already a man.

**Adriana:** Jejejeje, sí, todo el mundo dice eso. Él habla como adulto, ¿verdad?

**Adriana:** Hehehe, yes, everyone says that. He talks like an adult, right?

**Roberto:** Sí, definitivamente, pero eso es bueno. Así que Miguel, ¿tienes hermanos y hermanas?

**Robert:** Yes, definitely, but that's a good thing. So, Miguel, do you have brothers and sisters?

**Miguel:** Desafortunadamente, tengo hermanos.

**Miguel:** Unfortunately, I have siblings.

**Roberto:** Oye, ¿por qué dices, “desafortunadamente”, niño?

**Roberto:** Hey, why you say, “unfortunately”, kid?

**Miguel:** No hay razón, Jejeje.

**Miguel:** No reason, hehehe.

**Roberto:** Hmmm, ¿cuántos años tienen tu hermano y hermana?

**Robert:** Hmmm, how old are your brother and sister?

**Miguel:** Mi hermana tiene tres y mi hermano tiene diez años. Él es mayor que yo, pero mi hermana es menor que yo. No son más inteligentes que yo, son tontos, jejeje.

**Miguel:** My sister is 3 years old and my brother is 10 yrs. old. He is older than me, but my sister is younger than me. They are not smarter than me, they are stupid, hehehe.

**Adriana:** ¡Oye, Miguel! Sé bueno, ¡no digas esto!

**Adriana:** Hey, Miguel! Be nice, don't say that!

**Miguel:** Lo siento señor...

**Miguel:** I am sorry sir...

**Robert:** Está bien, muchacho. Adriana, él es muy listo. Gracias por finalmente presentarnos.

**Robert:** It's okay, kid. Adriana, he is very bright. Thanks for finally introducing us.

--Fin de la historia--

--End of story--

## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Me gustaría presentarte:** “Me gustaría” means, *I would like*. As mentioned in the first story, this is considered a bit more advanced Spanish, but it’s important to talk about what you **WOULD** like even at this level.

I learned how to use it without even knowing why I am really using it and without all the explanations. I abused word and I was able to ask for many things.

The word *gustaría* is the conditional form of *gustar* in the first-person singular. You can use the conditional tense to make excuses too, if you’d like the learn more about it, please **check out this post** on the Gritty Spanish blog!

Remember when we spoke about “Gustar”(to be pleasing to)? This is the verb the word comes from.

So, if you want to say, “*I would like a cigarette*”, it’s “*Me gustaría un cigarrillo*”.

She wanted to introduce her son to the guy, so she used the verb, “*Presentar*”(Introduce/to present). See how she also added the “**te**” there? It means, “you”.

**Se llama:** When you want to ask someone “*what is your name?*”, you say *¿cómo te llamas?* (informal) or *¿cómo se llama?* (formal). You can think about it as “*What do you call yourself?*”.

This is how you would ask:

- ¿Cómo **me** llamo? (**Yo**) What is my name?
- ¿Cómo **te** llamas? (**Tú**) What is your name?
- ¿Cómo **se** llama? (**Él/Ella**) What is his/her name?
- ¿Cómo **se** llama? (**Usted**) What is your name? (formal)
- ¿Cómo **nos** llamamos? (**Nosotros**) What is our name?
- ¿Cómo **se** llaman? (**Ustedes**) What are all of your names?
- ¿Cómo **se** llaman? (**Ellos**) What are their names?

In the story, she is talking about her son, she is saying “his name is”.

- Yo me llamo - My name is
- Tú te llamas - Your name is
- Él/ella se llama - His/her name is
- Usted se llama - Your (formal) name is
- Nosotros nos llamamos - Our names are
- Ustedes se llaman - Your names are
- Ellos se llaman - Their names are

**Miguelito**: The boy's name is Miguel, but the character added a diminutive, “ito” to his name, making it, “Miguelito”. You can add diminutives to some words to indicate smallness or show affection. You'll hear Spanish-speaking natives using diminutives a lot.

Just like in English when you say “kitty” instead of “cat” or “doggy” instead of “dog”.

### **Examples:**

- (Gato) Gat**ito** =kitty (male) /gatita (female)
- (Casa) Cas**ita**= little house
- (Abuela) Abuel**ita**= grandma
- (Face) Car**ita** = Little face

And so on...

With him adding the “ito” to Miguel's name, he is just calling him, “*Little Miguel*” instead of saying, “*pequeño Miguel*”.

*Pequeño* – Small/little

Learn more about how to use diminutives in Spanish in [this Gritty Spanish blog post!](#)

**Dime**: This is the compound of the informal second-person singular (*tú*) affirmative imperative/command form of the verb, “*decir*” (to say, to tell), “*di*” and the pronoun “*me*”. Together, “*Dime*” means, “*Tell me*”.

**Dime** - You tell me

**Dite** -You tell yourself

**Dile** - You tell him/her

**Dinos** - You tell us

**Diles** -You tell them

**Muchacho**: This was used in an earlier story for a woman. I mentioned that it will be more appropriate to use it when talking to a young person.

A person his age would never be offended being called, “*muchacho*” or “*Muchacha*”, so you're safe.

**Ya**: This little word means, “*already*” in this context.

The word can be a little complicated, but never stress yourself over these kinds of things.

Depending on the context, **Ya** has different meanings.

Here are a few,

Ya – Now

Ya - Right now

Ya – Later

Ya - No longer

Sometimes, during a conversation, you'll ask someone something, and they will just say, "Ya" in response. In this context, it means, "Okay". *Dominicanos* do that a lot.

**Así que**: This just means, "So".

**Here are some examples:**

"No puedo nadar, **así que** no voy a meterme al agua."

"I can't swim, **so** I am not going into the water."

"Yo necesito dinero, **así que** tengo que trabajar."

"I need money, **so** I have to work."

"Tengo mucha hambre, **así que** voy a cocinar algo."

"I am very hungry, **so** I am going to cook something."

Another similar word is, "Entonces", but it's not used as much in the middle of an expression like *Así que*, but that does not make it incorrect.

Using the previous examples, we have:

"No puedo nadar, **entonces** no voy a meterme al agua."

"Yo necesito dinero, **entonces** tengo que trabajar."

"Tengo mucha hambre, **entonces** voy a cocinar algo."

Examples using “*Entonces*” at the beginning of a phrase:

“**Entonces**, ¿qué voy a hacer?”

“**So**, what are you gonna do?”

“**Entonces**, ¿vas a ir conmigo?”

“**So**, you’re going to come with me?”

**Hermanos y hermanas**: *Hermanos* is “*Brothers*” and “*Hermanas*” is “*Sisters*”.

He could have just said, “*Hermanos*” which is “*siblings*”. Remember, in Spanish, if you have 50 sisters and only 1 brother, it’s still “*hermanos*”, which is masculine(plural).

If you have all sisters, then it will be, “*hermanas*”, but the character does know that yet. If the boy had all sisters, and he asked him, “*Tienes hermanos*”, he would have responded, “*Si, tengo dos hermanas*”.

**Tengo Hermanos**: *Tengo* is from the verb, “*Tener*”(To have). *Tengo* is the Yo form (first-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Here the boy could have simply said, *Sí, tengo* = Yes, I have (*siblings*)

“*Siblings*” in English could mean either brothers or sisters.

The word “*hermanOs*” in Spanish could mean:

a) All his siblings are male

b) He could have sisters, but there is at least 1 brother.  
(Otherwise, he would use the word “*hermanAs*”

Roberto specifically asked if he had brothers and sisters.

If Miguel answers just "*hermanOs*" after that question; it is implied that he does not have any sisters. Otherwise, he would have answered "*Sí, tengo herman**As** y herman**Os***", or "*Sí, tengo una hermana y un hermano*", etc.

**Mayor que yo:** That's a great example of how to make comparisons in Spanish.

*Mayor* means, "*older*". If you wanted to say, "*I am older than you.*", you can say, "*Soy mayor que tú*".

You can also say "*Soy más grande que tú*", literally meaning, "*I am more bigger than you*".

### **Examples of how you can make comparisons in Spanish:**

"Soy **menor que** mi hermana."

"I am **younger than** my sister."

"He is **worse than** my sister playing baseball"

"Él es **peor que** mi hermana jugar beisbol".

"Mi amigo es **mejor que** yo jugando deportes."

"My friend is **better than** me playing sports."

"Mi primo es **más alto** que yo."

"My cousin is **taller** than me."

"Tengo **menos** libros que ella."

"I have **fewer** books than she does."

You can read more about **[comparisons in this post](#)** on our Gritty Spanish blog!

**Sé bueno**: If you ever want to tell someone who is misbehaving, “Be nice”, then this is what you say, “*sé bueno*”.

The word, “*sé*” comes from the verb, “*Ser*”(to be). *Sé* is the *tú* form of the imperative/command.

“*Sé amable*”, could be correct. But *amable* means more like “*nice*” as in kind/friendly.

“*Sé bueno*” in this context is more like telling someone to behave.

You could maybe use, “*No seas grosero*”(Don't be rude).

You can also say “*sé amable*”, meaning, “be nice” or “be kind”; or “*no seas grosero*” (don't be rude).

**Listo**: *Listo* is an adjective with multiple meanings, it depends on if you are going to use the verb *ser* or with *estar*. Here, it's used with the verb ***ser***(to be), to mean smart. It can also mean, “Ready” when you're using it with the verb, “*Estar*”(to be).

“***Yo soy listo.***”

“I am ***Smart.***”

“Yo estoy ***listo.***”

“I am ***ready.***”

## SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Introducing yourself in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Giving commands in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Common Spanish Greetings](#)
- ✓ [Conversation Starters in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

## Quizzes for Episode 6

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 7: We are Broke



### **Synopsis:**

Cash-strapped best friends, Valentina and Elizabeth converse about their sad financial situation. You'll learn how to talk about your financial situation in this episode as well. Of course, you'll be able to talk about being broke, hopefully you won't, talking about investments, etc. ([Back to episode list](#))

[Click here to learn more and purchase the audio!](#)

**Valentina:** Elizabeth, estos días estoy en bancarrota. No puedo pagar nada.

**Valentina:** Elizabeth, these days I am so broke. I can't afford anything.

**Elizabeth:** Yo también, el costo de vida es muy alto. Tengo tantas deudas.

**Elizabeth:** Me too, the cost of living is very high. I have so much debt.

**Valentina:** Quiero comprar una casa un día, pero en esta ciudad, es casi imposible. Yo pienso en eso todo el tiempo, pero es difícil tener una casa aquí.

**Valentina:** I want to buy a house one day, but in this city, it's almost impossible. I think about that all the time, but it's difficult to own a home here.

**Elizabeth:** Sí, Valentina, vivimos para pagar cuentas. Necesito invertir en algo.

**Elizabeth:** Yes, Valentina, we live to pay bills. I need to invest in something.

**Valentina:** ¿Cómo qué? ¿Tienes alguna idea?

**Valentina:** Like what? Do you have any ideas?

**Elizabeth:** Quizás, mi propio negocio. Tengo que ahorrar más dinero, así que, lo primero es deshacerme de ese auto caro.

**Elizabeth:** Maybe, my own business. I have to save

more money, so, the first thing is to get rid of that expensive car.

**Valentina:** Así es, con ese carro, es difícil ahorrar dinero.

**Valentina:** That's right, with that car, it's hard to save money.

**Elizabeth:** Tienes razón, es una inversión horrible si quieres llamarla una “inversión”.

**Elizabeth:** You're right, it's a horrible investment if you want to call it an “investment”.

**Valentina:** No, no es una inversión para nada, es un préstamo. Tenemos que tomar mejores decisiones financieras, Elizabeth.

**Valentina:** No, It's not an investment at all, it's a loan. We have to make better financial decisions, Elizabeth.

**Elizabeth:** Tienes razón, no podemos continuar en bancarrota así para siempre.

**Elizabeth:** You're right, we cannot continue broke like this forever.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of Story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Estos días:** When you want to say, ‘These days’ or “nowadays” in Spanish, you can say, “estos días”. You can also say, “hoy en día” or “actualmente”.

"Estos" means, "these". "Estos" is the plural form of "Esto"(this). This is why the word, "día"(day) is plural as well, "días"(days).

### Examples:

**"Estos días** los jóvenes no piensan."

**"These days** the young ones don't think."

\*You can also translate "los jóvenes" to "young people".

**"Hoy en día,** no quiero ir a ninguna parte."

**"These days,** I don't want to go anywhere."

**"Estos días** la música apesta."

**"These days** the music sucks".

**bancarrota:** This is a good way to say, "Broke". The word, "bancarrota" literally means, "bankruptcy".

"Pelado" is a regional term for "broke", it is not used everywhere, so it will sound unfamiliar to some.

"Roto" or "bien roto" is another example of a regional term.

If you say "Estoy bien roto" in Mexico, people will understand that you are broke, but someone from Spain MAY NOT get it.

There are other regional alternatives, such as:

"Estar sin un duro"

"Estar en la ruina"

"No tener un peso".

More universal alternatives includes:

- Estar en la quiebra
- Estar en bancarrota
- No tener un centavo
- No tener ni en qué caerse muerto

You can also simply say, "*no tengo dinero*" if you want to say you are broke or don't have money.

You can check out [this Gritty Spanish blog post](#) to learn more ways to express that you're broke in Spanish.

**No puedo pagar**: To say you can't afford something, can use the verb, "*Poder*" (to be able to/can do something). She used the conjugated version of that verb, "*Puedo*"(I can). That is the Yo (first person singular) form of that verb used in the present indicative tense.

She then used the infinitive /nonconjugated verb, "*Pagar*"(to pay).

Together, this makes it, "*I can't pay*"(*no puedo pagar*), for what? "*nada*"(nothing/anything).

How do you say, "*I can't afford it*"...

Well, depends on if the item you're referring to is masculine or feminine.

If someone shows you a "phone"(**El** teléfono) and you can't afford **it**, you can say,

"*No puedo pagarlo*"

Or

"*No **lo** puedo pagar*".

It's **lo**, because we are talking about a masculine item, if it was a feminine item, then it would have been, "**la**".

### For example:

The house (**la** casa).

"No puedo pagar**la**" or "No **la** puedo pagar"

Remember that "**lo**" can also represent, "*him*" and "**la**", "*her*".

**Pienso en eso:** When you want to say, "*I think about that*" in Spanish, you can use this phrase, "*Pienso en eso*". The word, "*Pienso*" comes from the verb, "*Pensar*" (to think). *Pienso* is the Yo form (First-person singular) of the verb used in the indicative present tense.

### Examples:

"Voy a **pensar en eso**."

"I am going **to think about that**."

"¿Vas a **pensar en eso**?"

"You going **to think about that**?"

Notice in the above examples, I used the verb "*ir*" (to go) to talk about what one is **GOING to do**...

**Quizás:** When you want to say, "*Perhaps*" or "*Maybe*" you can use this word. You can also use "*tal vez*", "*a lo mejor*" "*puede ser*".

**Tengo que ahorrar:** Remember, to talk about what you **HAVE TO Do**, you use the verb, "*Tener*" (to have). Followed by the word "*Que*" then select an infinitive verb, such as

“Ahorrar”(to save) in this instance.

### Examples:

“**Tengo que** ganar”

“**I have to** win”

“**Tienes que** enviarle un mensaje de texto a tu hermana.”

“**You have to** send a text to your sister.”

**Note:** “Text” only means “texto” when talking about words in a document. When talking about text messages= *mensaje de texto*; or just “mensaje”. “

“**Tenemos que** ver a nuestros padres”

“**We have to** see our parents”

**Deshacerme:** When you want to talk about getting rid of something or somebody, you can use his verb, “Deshacer”.

The phrase “quiero deshacerme” follows this formula:

(yo) **Quiero** (I want to) + **deshacerme**

Where “Deshacerme” is the compound of the infinitive *deshacer* and the pronoun *me*

The word “deshacer” by itself has different meanings, such as “melt/ dissolve”, “undo/destroy”, but when you add a pronoun (**me, te, se, nos**), the meaning changes to “get rid of”

(yo) Quiero Deshacerme - I want to get rid of

(tú) Quieres deshacerte - You want to get rid of

(él, ella) Quiere deshacerse - He/she wants to get rid of

(usted) Quiere deshacerse - You (formal) want to get rid of

(Nosotros) queremos deshacernos – We want to get rid of

(Ustedes) quieren deshacerse - You all want to get rid of  
(Ellos) quieren deshacerse - They want to get rid of

**Llamarla:** She said, “*Si quieres llamar**la**...*”(if you want to call it...). See how the “**la**” was added to the infinite verb? The “**la**” represents, “**LA inversión**”(THE investment). That “**la**” can also be a girl/woman.

### Example:

“*Quieres llamar**la** ahora?*”

“You wanna call **her** now?”

“*Quiero llamar**lo** mañana.*”

“I wanna call **him** tomorrow.”

### SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Different ways to say that you're broke in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Different ways to say “maybe in Spanish”](#)
- ✓ [Talking about money in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### Quizzes for Episode 7

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 8: A conversation about a Song



## Synopsis:

Have you ever thought about using music to improve your Spanish? Well, this is what Ricardo is kind of trying to get his good friend, Carmen to do. He wants her to learn English, but she is full of excuses. The two speak about a song while driving around. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gitty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**\*\*[Se escucha](#) música en el radio de carro\*\***

*\*\*Music plays in the car's radio\*\**

**Carmen:** Me encanta esta canción, Ricchard. No me gusta el hip-hop, pero me gusta mucho esa canción.

**Carmen:** I love this song, Ricard. I don't like hip-hop, but I like that song a lot.

**Ricardo:** Porque no quieres aprender inglés, por eso no te gusta el hip-hop. Pero estoy de acuerdo, es una buena canción.

**Richard:** Because you don't want to learn English, that's why you don't like hip-hop. But I agree, it's a good song.

**Carmen:** Lo sé, simplemente no tengo el tiempo para aprender inglés. Yo escucho esta canción todo el tiempo. La escucho en la TV, el radio, y vi el video en YouTube. Me encanta el video.

**Carmen:** I know, I just don't have the time to learn English. I hear this song all the time. I hear it on TV, the radio, and I saw the video on YouTube. I love the video.

**Ricardo:** ¿Hay un video? Tienes que mostrarme el video, no lo he visto todavía.

**Richard:** There is a video? You have to show me the video, I haven't seen it yet.

**Carmen:** Voy a buscar la canción ahora en YouTube.

**Carmen:** I am going to search for the song now on YouTube.

**Ricardo:** Ok, gracias. No puedo esperar para verlo. Por cierto, ¿tú entiendes la letra?

**Richard:** Okay, thanks. I can't wait to see it. By the way, do you understand the lyrics?

**Carmen:** Yo no entiendo nada, solamente me gusta el ritmo. Aunque no entiendo la letra, me gusta cómo suena. La voz del artista, etcétera, es pegajosa.

**Carmen:** I don't understand anything, I just like the beat. Even though I don't understand the lyrics, I like how it sounds. The artist's voice, etcetera, It's catchy.

**Ricardo:** Por eso deberías aprender inglés. Vas a apreciarla más. Me gusta el coro, ¿te gusta el coro?

**Richard:** That's why you should learn English. You are going to appreciate it more. I like the chorus, do you like the chorus?

**Carmen:** Claro, me encanta. De hecho, esa es mi parte favorita. Necesito aprender inglés, porque me gustaría aprender más sobre la canción.

**Carmen:** Of course, I love it. In fact, that is my favorite part. I need to learn English, because I would like to learn more about the song.

**Ricardo:** Qué vergüenza, ¡debes aprender! Ni siquiera sé el nombre del artista. No puedo recordar su nombre en absoluto.

**Richard:** What a shame, you should learn! I don't even know the name of the artist. I can't remember his name at all.

**Carmen:** Jajaja, yo tampoco. Bueno, debes enseñarme la letra. Soy una nueva fanática.

**Carmen:** Hahaha, me neither. Well, you should teach me the lyrics. I am a new fan.

**Ricardo:** Ok, no hay problema. Voy a enseñarte la letra, voy a traducir para ti y todo, es fácil de aprender.

**Richard:** Okay, no problem. I am going to teach you the lyrics, I am going to translate for you and everything, it's easy to learn.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Se escucha** : In here, we are using what's called the passive voice. It's considered more "advanced" Spanish, but it's important to have a basic understanding of it.

**The passive voice** is generally used to talk about a person or object without making mention of whoever or whatever is performing the action on that person or object.

**Examples:**

**"Se habla** español aquí."

*"Spanish is spoken here."*

**"Se vende** queso."

*"Cheese is sold."*

**“Se vende ropa.”**

*“Clothing is sold here.”*

**“Se enseña español.”**

*“Spanish is taught here.”*

In this case, “Se escucha música” can be, “Music is heard” or something like, “Sound of music playing”.

You won't see too much of the passive voice being used in this version of Gritty Spanish, but if you are curious about learning more about the mysterious se, be sure **to check out his blog post** on the Gritty Spanish blog!

**Estoy de acuerdo:** When you agree with someone or something, you can say, “Estoy de acuerdo”.

*Estoy* is from the verb, “Estar”(to be) used in the Yo (First-person singular) form in the present indicative tense.

If you wanted to ask someone, “Do you agree?”, you'd say, “¿Estás de acuerdo?”.

**Lo sé:** When you want to say, “I know”, you'll say, “Lo sé”. The word, sé comes from the verb, “Saber”(to know). It is the Yo (First-person singular) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Literally, Lo sé means, “I know **it**”. This is why the “lo” is there, I know in our minds it's, “**It** I know”, yes?

If you want to say, “I know” and do not have anything else to say, make sure you add the “lo” first. If you don't, and just say, “sé” the person you're speaking to will be looking at you, waiting for more and say, “¿Sabes qué?” (You know what?).

### Example:

**"Sé** que él está loco"

**"I know** that he is crazy"

This is how the verb, "Saber"(to know) is conjugated in the present tense.

**Yo Sé** – I know

**Tú Sabes** – You know

**El/Ella Sabe**- He/She /knows

**Usted Sabe** – You (formal) know

**Nosotros/Nosotras Sabemos** – We know

**Ustedes Saben**- You all know

**Ellos/Ellas Saben** – They know

**La escucho**: They are talking about a song, "**la canción**". This is where that "**la**" comes from. It represents "**la canción**" (the song).

The word, "Escucho" comes from the verb, "Escuchar" (to listen). *Eschucho* is the Yo (first-person singular) form of the verb used in the present/indicative tense.

**La escucho** is saying, "*I listen to it*". It is the song, "**la canción**".

If you know me, you'll know that I believe using Spanish-language songs can help improve your Spanish. Every so often I'll send out songs with the ability to download the Spanish/English lyrics to learn from them. Customers/Subscribers love them.

Music also makes you feel a part of the culture. You'll come to a point when you'll listen to songs strictly for enjoyment.

One of the very first songs I used was one by the legendary Héctor Lavoe, a classic Salsa song! You can [check it out here](#) and even download the Spanish/English lyrics I had created in this blog post on the Gritty Spanish blog!

When a Spanish-speaking co-worker recommended this song to me, I didn't know much Spanish but got to a point where I was able to sing it word for word.

This is awesome FREE content.

**Vi el video**: The word "Vi" comes from the verb, "ver" (to see). Vi is the Yo (first-person singular) form of the verb, but it's in the preterite (indicative) past tense. Veo is the present indicative tense used in the Yo (first-person singular) form.

So, if you wanted to say, "**I see** the video" in the present tense, it would be, "**Veo** el video". But in the preterite indicative past tense it's, "**Vi** el video" (**I saw** the video).

Here is how the verb, "Ver" (to see) is conjugated in the preterite indicative past tense.

**Yo** Vi – I saw

**Tú** Viste – You saw

**Él/Ella** Vio – He/she saw

**Usted** Vio – You (formal) saw

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Vimos – We saw.

**Ustedes** Vieron – You all saw

**Ellos/Ellas** Vieron – They saw

### Examples:

"Te **vi** ayer."

"**I saw** you yesterday."

"La **vieron** anoche."

"**They saw** her last night."

**Check out this blog post** on the Gritty Spanish blog to learn more about the preterite tense in Spanish!

**Tienes que mostrarme:** This is another example of how you can use the verb, "Tener" (to have) when talking about **having to do** something. *Tú tienes* (You have) comes from the verb "Tener" (to have). It's the *Tú* (Informal second-person singular) form of the verb in the present indicative tense. The subject pronoun, "*TÚ*" could be added before the "*Tienes*", but it's not needed, since saying, "*Tienes*" is enough.

So, then she added the "Que" then an infinitive verb, "mostrar" (to show). You see that she added the, "me" to the end of the verb, making it, "*mostrarme*", which means, "You have to show **me**".

### Example:

"**Tengo que mostrarte** como hacerlo."

"**I have to show you** how to do it."

This also could have been,

"Tienes que **enseñarme** el video."

The verb, “enseñar” means, “to teach”, but when you ask someone to show you something, even if it's something like showing you a video on YouTube, you may use that verb.

**Enseñar** (to educate) = teach.

**Example:**

*“Mi mama me enseñó matemáticas.”*

*“My mom taught me math.”*

**Enseñar** (To allow to view, to display) = show

**Example:**

*“Ella me enseñó las fotos de su boda.”*

*“She showed me her wedding pictures.”*

**no lo he visto**: In this version of Gritty Spanish, you'll see some “Advanced” Spanish used by some of the characters, but don't be intimidated when you come across them. Don't put too much pressure on yourself when you're learning Spanish.

Let's break it down...

With “**no**” you know that it's a negative statement right away.

With “**lo**” you also know that it's a masculine subject, “The video” (**EL** video) in this case.

Now, “**he**”....

You know when we say in English, “You've”, “I've”, “She/he has”, “They've”, “We've”?

Remember when we spoke about, “Hay”(there is/is there) and we said that it comes from the auxiliary verb, “Haber”(to have).

In this particular story, the **present perfect** form of the verb is used.

This is how it's conjugated in that form in the present tense:

**Yo** He – I've

**Tú** Has – You've (Informal)

**Usted** Ha – You've(formal)

**Él/Ella** Ha – She/he has

**Nosotros** Hemos – We've

**Ellos/Ellas** Han – They've

In the story, the Yo form of the verb, “haber” was used, it's “**he**”(I've).

**Haber** is always followed by a second verb, in this case, it's “ver”(to see), but we have to use the *Past Participle* of the verb, so it becomes, “visto”.

**A past participle** is a verb form that's typically used with perfect tenses. It's easy to form the past participle in Spanish. All you have to do is drop the ending (-ar, -er or -ir) from the infinitive verb and add **-ado** or **-ido**, depending on the verb. -Ar verbs take **-ado**.

Here are some examples for some **ir** and **er** verbs:

hacer (to do) – hecho (done)

decir (to say) – dicho (said)

freír (to fry) – frito (fried)

escribir (to write) – escrito (written)

abrir (to open) – abierto (open)

cubrir (to cover) – cubierto (covered)

morir (to die) – muerto (dead)

vivir (to live) – vivido (dead)

And here are some **AR** verbs...

hablar (to talk) – hablado (spoken)

caminar (to walk) – caminado (walked)

estudiar (to study) – estudiado (studied)

usar (to use) – usado (used)

bailar (to dance) – bailado (danced)

escuchar (to listen) – escuchado (listened)

comprar (to buy/to purchase) – comprado (purchased)

So, if I wanted to say, "**I've purchased** a car", it would be,  
"**He comprado** un carro."

If I was having a conversation with someone about the car and they asked me if I purchased it, I'll respond, "**lo he comprado**." (I've purchased it).

See how this works?

If you were speaking in the **preterite past tense**, you'd just say, "**Lo compré**" (I bought /purchased it).

Back to the story...

Together, "**no lo he visto**" is, "**I've not seen it**". If you were to read it as if you were reading English word for word, it would literally be, "**It I've not seen**".

If you wanted to say the same thing using the preterite past tense, it would be, "**no lo vi**" "I didn't see it".

At this stage, speaking in the preterite past tense will be easier for you, but as you advance, you'll abuse the present perfect form since it's so easy to form sentences with them.

You are probably thinking to yourself, "*there is NO way I'll learn all these tenses, all these verbs, etc.*" but after a while, they'll just come naturally without too much effort, believe it or not.

If you want to learn more about the present perfect, [you may click this link](#) to read more on the Gritty Spanish blog!

**No puedo esperar para verlo**: *Puedo* ("I can") comes from the verb, "*Poder*" (*to be able to/can do something*). "*Puedo*" is the "Yo" (first-person singular) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. The "No" before the "*Puedo*" makes it, "*I can't*".

Then he uses the full, nonconjugated verb, "*esperar*" (*to wait*).

Here, "*para*" means "*to*".

*Ver* is a verb that means, "*To see*".

The "**lo**" was added to that verb.

They are talking about *the video* (**El** video), which is a masculine noun.

Remember, "*lo*" can also be *him*.

Like, "*I can't wait to see **him***" (*No puedo esperar para verlo*).

Want to learn more about this little word “lo” in Spanish?  
Check out [this Gritty Spanish blog post!](#)

**Solamente:** *Solamente* means, “only/ just”.

**Example:**

**Maria:** “¿Qué haces ahora?”

**Maria:** “What are you doing now?”

**Antonio:** “Nada, **solamente** estoy aquí en casa.”

**Antonio:** “Nothing, **just** here in the house.”

You can also shorten it and say, “Solo”.

**Examples:**

“**Solo** quiero ir al show con mi amigo.”

“I **just** want to go to the show with my friend.”

“**Solo** quiero mi dinero.”

“I **just** want my money.”

“**Solo** quiero ir a casa.”

“I **just** want to go home.”

“**Solo** tienes que hablar con ella.”

“You **just** have to talk to her.”

**Deberías aprender inglés:** We spoke about what you or someone else **HAVE to do** before, but how about what you or someone else **SHOULD do**?

You can use the verb, “Deber”(to owe, must) in the conditional form. “Deberías” is the Tú (Informal second-person singular) form, conditional of the verb “deber”.

(yo) Debería (I should)

(yo) Debo (I must)

"Deber" = "must" when it is a synonym of "*tener que*" (have to).

Deber (infinitive) = must

Deber (conditional) = should

And right after, *deberías*, he used the full, nonconjugated verb, "Aprender" (to learn).

### Examples:

**"Debería ir** a Venezuela el próximo año."

**"I should go** to Venezuela next year."

**"Deberías** escuchar a esta canción."

**"You should** listen to this song."

**"Deberíamos ir** a la casa de María."

**"We should go** to María's house."

You may learn more about the conditional tense [in this post](#) on the Gritty Spanish blog!

**Vas a apreciarla más:** Vas (You are going) is from the verb, "ir" (to go). Vas is the Tú (Informal second-person singular) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. He is using that verb to talk about what she is **going to do**, speaking directly to her.

This is the formula...

## ir + a + infinitive verb

The infinitive/nonconjugated verb here is, “Apreciar” (to appreciate). He then added the “**la**” at the end of it, since they are talking about **la** canción (**the** song).

### Examples:

*“Vas a divertirte en la fiesta.”*

*“You are going to have fun at the party.”*

*“Vas a hacer nuevos amigos.”*

*“You are going to make new friends.”*

**Ni siquiera:** “Ni siquiera” is a phrase that means “Not even”. “sé” (I know) comes from the verb, “saber” (to know). “Sé” is the “Yo” (First-person singular) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

If you want to say, “I don’t know”, then, of course, it’s, “No lo sé”.

But to say, “I don’t even know”, then you can remove the “No” and add “Ni siquiera”.

Here is another example of this phrase being used:

**“Ni siquiera sabes su nombre.”**

**“You don’t even know his name.”**

A lot of speakers will also remove, “Siquiera” and just leave the, “Ni”.

### For example:

**"He doesn't even know** *how to cook.*"

**"Ni sabe** *cocinar*".

**No puedo recordar**: If you want to say "I don't remember, you have 2 options":

-No me acuerdo

-No recuerdo

In this dialogue, he said:

**"I can't** *remember his name*".

You may also use the following to say the same thing.

1) **No puedo** recordar su nombre

2) **No puedo** acordarme de su nombreIn option #1

I can't = No puedo.

**"Recordar"** means **"to remember/to recall"** (first-person singular, unconjugated verb).

Su = his

Nombre = name

**"No puedo recordar su nombre."**

**"I can't remember his name."**

With option 2...

No puedo = I can't.

Acordarme = Compound of the infinitive **"acordar"** and the pronoun me.

“Acordar” by itself means “agree to/agree on”; but when you reflexively conjugate “acordar”— reflexive infinitive, and add a “**de**” after, the meaning changes to “to remember”/to recall”.

### Examples:

Yo no puedo acordarme **de** él = I can't remember him

Tú no puedes acordarte **de** él = You can't remember him

Él/Ella no puede acordarse **de** él = He/she can't remember him

Usted no puede acordarse **de** él = You (formal) can't remember him

Nosotros no podemos acordarnos **de** él = We can't remember him

Ustedes no pueden acordarse **de** él = You all can't remember him

Ellos no pueden acordarse **de** él = They can't remember him

*“No puedo acordarme de su nombre.”*

*“I can't remember his name.”*

A great way to ask someone, “You don't remember?” is, “¿no te acuerdes?, “no te acuerdas” or “¿no recuerdas?”. If you say “you don't remember \_\_\_\_\_”, then you say in Spanish ¿no te acuerdas de\_\_\_\_\_? Or ¿recuerdas a/él/la (depending on the case).

## **Remember:**

-acordarse (with “acordarse” you have to use a “de” after

-recordar (with recordar, you use “a/la/del, etc.”

## **Examples**

*¿Do you remember María?*

You can say the following:

*“¿Te acuerdas **de** María?”*

*“¿Recuerdas **a** María?”*

*Do you remember the night we met?*

You can say the following:

*“¿Te acuerdas **de** la noche en que nos conocimos?”*

*“¿Recuerdas **la** noche en que nos conocimos?”*

*“You don’t remember me?”*

You say:

*“¿No me recuerdas?”*

*“¿No te acuerdas **de** mí?”*

*“I spoke to her, but **she doesn’t remember me.**”*

You say:

*“Hablé con ella, pero no se acuerda **de** mí.”*

“Hablé con ella, pero no me recuerda.”

## SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Popular songs that will help you learn Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Tips for remembering Spanish vocabulary](#)
- ✓ [Learn the popular salsa song vivir mi vida](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

## Quizzes for Episode 8

[Click](#) on image below to access!



## Episode 9: Drinks at a Bar



### Synopsis:

Luna and her good friend Jesús are at a bar in their city. They talk about a bar, the atmosphere, drinks and even the bartender herself about a drink they are a little bit curious about. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

\*[Se escucha](#) música en el bar\*

\*Sound of music in the bar\*

**Luna:** Ese bar es [genial](#) Jesús; me encanta el ambiente y claro, las bebidas.

**Luna:** This bar is pretty cool Jesus; I love the environment and of course, the drinks.

**Jesús:** Estoy totalmente de acuerdo, Luna, especialmente esa bebida de allí.

**Jesus:** Yes, I totally agree, Luna, especially that drink over there.

**Luna:** ¿Cuál?

**Luna:** Which one?

**Jesús:** ¿Ves esa botella allá en la esquina? No puedo ver el nombre claramente.

**Jesus:** See that bottle over there in the corner? I can't see the name clearly.

**Luna:** Ah, ¿esa botella verde? ¿Es vodka?

**Luna:** Oh, that green bottle? It's vodka?

**Jesús:** Yo no sé, puede ser, pero no estoy seguro.

**Jesus:** I don't know, might be, but I am not sure.

**Luna:** ¿A qué sabe? ¿Es dulce? Sabes que me gustan las bebidas dulces.

**Luna:** How does it taste? Is it sweet? You know that I like sweet drinks.

**Jesús:** Es un poco amarga, pero me gusta el sabor. No es tan fuerte.

**Jesus:** It's a bit bitter, but I like the taste. It's not too strong.

**Luna:** Quiero probarla. ¿Dónde está la camarera del bar?

**Luna:** I want to try it. Where is the bartender?

**Jesús:** Ella está allí. Discúlpame, disculpa señorita...

**Jesus:** She is over there. Excuse me, excuse miss...

**Bartender:** Hola, ¿qué tal? ¿Necesitas algo de tomar?

**Bartender:** Hi, what's up? Do you need anything to drink?

**Jesús:** Sí, quiero otra de esa bebida, la botella verde, ¿cómo se llama esa bebida?

**Jesus:** Yes, I want another one of that drink, the green bottle, what's the name of that drink?

**Bartender:** Ah, se llama, "*El monstrito loco verde*".

**Bartender:** Oh, it's called, "*The crazy green monster*".

**Jesús:** OK, quiero pedir una para mi novia y para mí.

**Jesus:** Okay, I want to order one for my girlfriend and I.

**Bartender:** Ok, no hay problema, [voy a llevársela](#) a ustedes pronto.

**Bartender:** Okay, no problem, I am going to bring it to you all soon.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



**BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Se escucha:** In here, we are using the passive voice again. This is considered more advanced Spanish, but I am sure you've seen it around.

**The passive voice** is generally used to talk about a person or object without making mention of whoever or whatever is performing the action on that person or object.

**Examples:**

"Se vende queso."

"*Cheese is sold here.*"

"Se vende ropa."

"*Clothes is sold here.*"

Notice in the two examples, you have, "*here*" (aquí), but it's not mentioned in the Spanish translation? This is because it is implicit. If you see a sign that says "se vende queso", you assume that the cheese is sold in that specific place, not anywhere else.

In this case, "Se escucha música" can be, "*Music is heard*". You are specifying that the music is heard at the bar.

You won't see too much of the passive voice being used in this version of Gritty Spanish, but if you are curious about learning more about the mysterious se, be sure to **check out his blog post** out the Gritty Spanish blog!

**Genial:** When you look at the English side, Luna says, "*This bar is **pretty** cool Jesus*".

Let's talk about the word **pretty** for a second.

"Pretty" in this context mean "muy"(very/pretty) or "bastante"(quite/petty/very).

Pretty expensive = bastante/muy caro

Pretty boring = bastante/muy aburrido

### Examples:

"Esa cartera es **bastante** cara."

"That handbag is **quite** expensive."

"Quiero ese vestido, pero es **bastante** caro."

"I want that dress, but it's **pretty** expensive."

"Esa bebida es **bastante** buena."

"That drink is **pretty** good."

I'll never forget my first couple of months learning Spanish and I attempted to use that word, "pretty" to say something is, "pretty good".to a native Speaker.

I wanted to say, "That's pretty good".

I said the following, "**Eso es bonito bien**".

The word, "Bonito", means pretty/beautiful, but in Spanish, you don't use it to say something is, "pretty cool" for example. Bonito/Bonita is always "Cute/pretty/beautiful" etc.

I received the weirdest and the most confused look EVER from the native speaker, haha. But when you're learning, trust me, these things are going to happen and it's going to happen a lot! Guaranteed!

I had to mention that experience hahaha.

But just “cool” alone could have lots of different equivalents, most of them are regional.

The most general ones are “**genial**” and “**grandioso**”.

Both of these terms already imply that something is great, so it sounds redundant to say “*muy/bastante grandioso*” or “*muy/bastante*” genial.

So, this is why, “*Muy/bastante*” wasn’t in front of the word, “genial”.

The word, “genial” means *great, cool*.

There isn’t much slang used at all in this version of Gritty Spanish.

But if you want to sound a bit more “Cooler” if you’re in Mexico, for example, you can say “chido” and it’s the same as, “genial”. Try to use “chido” only in informal contexts, though. It is not a bad word, but some “fancy” or old people might not like hearing it.

In Spain, you can say, “molón” or “guay”.

Colombia: *Chévere, chimba or bacano*.

**Puede ser:** “He/she/it might be” can be translated to, “Puede ser”. “Puede” comes from the verb, “Poder”(to be able to/can do something). “Puede” is the él/ella/Usted form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

The verb, “Ser” means, “To be”.

**¿A qué sabe?** : This means, “How does it taste?”.

“Saber” means “To know”, but “Saber” also means “to taste”. The 3<sup>rd</sup> party *él/ella/usted* form of the verb is used in the present indicative tense because, they are talking about the drink, which is the “third person”. That word is, “Sabe”.

Us English speakers will want to say “¿cómo sabe?”, I know I’ve done this many times and was understood. But I should have said, “¿A qué sabe?”.

\*“¿Cómo sabe (él/ella/usted)?” could also mean “how does he/she know?”.

“¿cómo sabe ella que estoy casado?”

“How does she know that I am married?”

¿cómo sabe (usted) si eso es verdad)= How do you know if that’s true?

How= cómo, but there are very specific questions in which it just means “a qué” (maybe just 2 cases).

How far....? = ¿A qué distancia?

“¿A qué distancia está tu casa?”

“How far is your house?”

“¿Qué tan lejos está tu casa?”

(could be also correct)

How does \_\_\_\_ taste like? = ¿A qué sabe \_\_\_\_?

There are 2 ways of asking in English that have the same translation to Spanish.

How does it taste like? = ¿A qué sabe?

What does it taste like? = ¿A qué sabe?

"Esta bebida **sabe** a miel."

"This drink **tastes** like honey."

**Quiero probarla:** Quiero comes from the verb, "Querer" (to want/to love). "Quiero" as you know is the Yo (first person singular) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Probar is a verb that means, "to try" and "to taste" as well.

Luna says, "Quiero" (I want) then used a full/nonconjugated verb. Her choice was, "Probar" (to taste).

She also adds "**la**" at the end of that verb, because they were talking about *the drink* (**la** bebida).

**Voy a llevársela:** Voy (I am going) comes from the verb, "ir" (to go). Voy is the Yo (first person singular) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

What is she going to do? She is going to bring the drink to them. The verb, "llevar" means, "to take".

Se la voy a llevar (la bebida) a ustedes = Voy a llevársela (la bebida) a ustedes

(you can also omit the "a ustedes" since it is not really necessary.

If we were talking about 2 drinks:

Se las voy a llevar = Voy a llevárselas

Where ¿Qué voy a llevar? = las bebidas

¿A quién? = A ustedes

"Me la voy a llevar (la bebida) (a mí)."

"I am going to bring it (the drink) to me."

"Me las voy a llevar (a mí)."

"I am going to bring them (the drinks) to me."

"Te la voy a llevar (la bebida, a ti)"

"I am going to bring it (the drink) to you (singular, informal 'you')"

"Te las voy a llevar (las bebidas, a ti)"

"I am going to bring them (the drinks) to you (singular informal 'you')"

"Se la voy a llevar (la bebida, a él/ella/usted)"

"I am going to bring it (the drink) to him/her/ formal you."

"Nos la voy a llevar (la bebida, a nosotros)"

"I am going to bring it (the drink) to us."

"Nos las voy a llevar (las bebidas, a nosotros)"

"I am going to bring them (the drinks) to us."

"Se la voy a llevar (la bebida, a ustedes)"

"I am going to bring **it** (the drink) to all of you."

"Se las voy a llevar (las bebidas, a nosotros)"

*"I am going to bring them (the drinks) to all of you."*

*"Se la voy a llevar (la bebida, a ellos)"*

*"I am going to bring it (the drink) to them."*

*"Se las voy a llevar (las bebidas, a ellos)"*

*"I am going to bring them (the drinks) to them."*

If you want to make it easier, you can also say the following:

*"Les voy a llevar la bebida pronto."*

*"I am going to bring the drink soon."*

There is another popular word for *drink*, "Trago", which is a masculine word. If she was referring to "Trago", then she would have said, "se **lo** voy a llevar a ustedes" ...

Learn more about [\*\*ordering drinks in Spanish in this post\*\*](#) on the Gritty Spanish blog!

## SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Phrases for ordering drinks Spanish](#)
- ✓ [77 Basic Spanish phrases to Learn](#)
- ✓ [Phrases to talk about a hangover in Spanish](#)

[\(Back to episode list\)](#)

## Quizzes for Episode 9

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 10: Time in the Gym



## Synopsis:

In this episode, best friends, April and Ana are inside of a gym in their area. You'll learn some basic Spanish-language Gym vocabulary here. Ana even gets a little annoyed with her friend because she is more concerned with posting pics of their workouts on social media. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Abril:** Ay sí, ¡por fin estoy en el gimnasio! [Gracias por convencerme](#) de ir contigo Ana...

**April:** Ah yes, I am finally at the gym! Thanks for convincing me to go with you Ana...

**Ana:** No hay problema, Abril, me vendría bien la compañía; me motiva. Es mejor con una amiga.

**Ana:** No problem, April, I can always use the company; it motivates me. It's better with a friend.

**Abril:** Pues, estoy feliz, ¡me siento genial!

**April:** Well, I am happy, I feel great!

**Ana:** Eso es bueno. Sabes que ninguna de nuestras amigas quiere ir nunca.

**Ana:** That's good. You know that none of our friends ever want to go.

**Abril:** Claro que no, la gente es muy perezosa hoy en día.

**April:** Of course not, people are very lazy nowadays.

**Ana:** ¡Eso es cierto! Entonces, ¿qué ejercicio quieres empezar a hacer?

**Ana:** That's true! So, which exercise do you want to start doing?

**Abril:** Hmmmm, quiero probar estas pesas de allí, pero alguien está usándolas.

**April:** Hmmmm, I want to try those weights over there, but someone is using them!

**Ana:** Ah, está bien, pero no puedes levantar demasiado, no tan pesadas. Tienes que empezar con algo menos pesado.

**Ana:** Ah okay, but you can't lift too much, not too heavy. You have to start with something less heavy.

**Abril:** Exacto, no estoy tan fuerte todavía. Voy a ir a correr en la caminadora por quince minutos. Y luego, voy a hacer unas lagartijas. Y después de eso, voy a hacer un par de saltos de tijera.

**April:** Exactly, I am not that strong yet. I am going to run on the treadmill for 15 minutes. And later, I am going to do some pushups. And after that, I am going to do a couple of jumping jacks.

**Ana:** Esta es una idea fantástica, Abril. También tenemos que hacer unas abdominales para tu barrigota, jajaja.

**Ana:** This is a fantastic idea, April. We also have to do some sit-ups for your fat stomach, hahaha.

**Abril:** Jajaja, es verdad....Mira, amiga, voy a publicar esta foto en Instagram ahora mismo. Oh Dios mío, Ana, ¡ya estás sudando!

**April:** Hahaha, it's true...Look, girlfriend, I am going to post this photo on Instagram right now. Oh my God, Ana, you're already sweating!

**Ana:** Oye, chica, yo no vengo al gimnasio a jugar. Deja de sacar fotos para las redes sociales.

**Ana:** Hey girl, I don't come to the gym to play around. Stop taking pictures for social media!

--Fin de la historia--

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Gracias por convencerme:** When you want to say, "Thanks for...", you'll say, "Gracias por..." followed by an infinitive verb.

### **Examples:**

"Gracias por compartir."

"Thank you for sharing."

"Gracias por confiar en mí."

"Thank you for trusting me."

When you want to thank someone for coming, it's, "Gracias por **venir**". If you want to say, "thanks for helping me", it's, "Gracias por **ayudarme**".

To thank someone for "everything", then it's, "Gracias por **todo**".

In this part of the story, after "Gracias por", she used the verb, "convencer" which means, "to convince". She added the "me" at the end, so now, it's, "convencer**me**" (convincing me).

### **Some other examples:**

"**Gracias por** escucharme."

"**Thanks for** listening to me."

"**Gracias por** decirme."

"**Thank you for** telling me."

Many new learners of Spanish, will say, “Gracias **PARA**...”, but use, “*Por*”.

This is understandable because both “*por*” and “*para*” translate to “*for*”. “*Por*” can also mean “*because of*”, “*to*”, “*per*”, “*over*”, “*because of*”, “*through*”; and “*para*” can also mean “*according to*” “*in order to*”, “*by*” and “*to*”.

You can learn some of the differences between *por* and *para* [in this Gritty Spanish blog post](#).

**Me vendría bien la compañía:** Based on what you've learned so far, you may want to translate this word for word and say something like, “*siempre puedo usar*”, which would be a very literal translation. “*Usar la compañía*”(to use the company) **does not work** in Spanish because you are not going to actually “*use*” it.

There are different ways to express this in Spanish, for example:

- Me vendría bien la compañía
- Me gustaría estar acompañada

Or even

- Me gustaría que vinieras conmigo

The first option is the closest one to the English phrase.

The word *vendría* is the conditional form of *venir*(to come) in the third person singular, *Él/Ella*; and formal second person singular (*usted*). Remembered when we spoke about the word, “*gustaría*” to say, “*Me gustaría un café*” (I would like a coffee)?

The word *gustaría* is the conditional form of the verb, “Gustar” (to like/to be pleasing to).

*Me vendría bien la compañía* is literally saying, “The company would come good to me”.

**Me motiva:** The word “Motiva” comes from the verb, “Motivar” (to motivate). *Motiva* is the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb in the present/indicative tense. She said, “*it motivates me*”, that, “*it*” is the “Third person” this is why the *Él/Ella/Usted* form was used.

**Pues:** In a situation where you’ll have to say, “Well” in a similar context, you can also use the word, “Pues” instead of the word, “Bueno”.

### Examples:

“**Pues**, ¿vas a hablar?”

“**Well**, are you gonna speak?”

It can also be used at the end of a sentence to mean, “then”

“No sé qué decirte, **pues**.”

“I don’t know what to tell you, **then**.”

**Quiere ir nunca:** When you want to say, “They never want to go”, you might say, “*nunca quieren ir*”, which would be correct if we had “*ellas*” before the verb. But the word “*quiere*” has to be singular because “*ninguna*” is singular. So, this is why the *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb was used and not the *Ellos/Ellas* form of the verb.

I know that there’s “*nuestras amigas*” right after...

But you can also say “*ninguna de ellas*” quiere ir, where “*ellas*” is “*nuestras amigas*” = none of them wants to go.

In short, this is just a matter of subject-verb agreement.

**Ninguna** quiere ir. The verb “quiere” is singular because of “ninguna”.

**Ellas** nunca quieren ir

**Quieres empezar a hacer:** “Quieres”(you want) comes from the verb, “Querer”(to want/to love). “Quieres” is the *tú* form of the verb used in the indicative present tense.

She then uses the full un-conjugated verb, “empezar”(to start/to begin).

And finally, we have the verb, *hacer* (to make/to do).

**Está usándolas:** *Está* is from the verb, “Estar”(to be). *Está* is the *Él/Ella/Usted* form from the verb, “Estar”.

She is talking about another person, so of course, that makes whoever was using the weights the “third person” so this is why she used the *Él/Ella/Usted* form.

“Usándolas” comes from the verb, “usar”(to use). The word, *usando* is the Present Participle of the verb *Usar*. The present participles in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

So, do you see the “*las*” at the end of it?

The “**Las**” represents *the weights* (**Las** pesas).

**Barrigota:** When you're speaking Spanish, you might be tempted to say something like, “**barriga gorda**”.

Yes, *fat*= *gorda*.

Phrases like “*panza gorda*”, “*barriga gorda*”, “*estómago gordo*” don't sound natural, but you'll be understood.

We have a few options when talking about **fat stomachs**:

- Gran barriga/barrigota
- Gran panza/panzota
- Enorme panza/enorme barriga.

**Ya estás sudando:** We mentioned that the word, “Ya” means, “*already*”. *Estás* is from the verb, “*Estar*”(to be). *Estás* is the *TÚ* version of the verb in the present indicative tense, which makes sense since she is talking directly to her best friend.

“*Sudando*” comes from the verb, “*sudar*” (to sweat). The word, *Sudando* is the Present Participle of the verb *Sudar*. The present participles in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

**Deja de sacar fotos:** If you ever want to tell someone to stop doing something, use the verb, “*Dejar*”  
The character said, “*Deja de sacar...*”

*Deja* comes from the verb, “*Dejar*”(to leave/to let). She is giving her a direct command, so she uses the command/Imperative “*tú*” form of the verb, “*Dejar*”. Anytime you want to tell someone to stop doing something, use the formula: **dejar + de + infinitive**.

When used with the preposition **de** before the **infinitive (dejar + de + infinitive)**, it means to quit or to stop doing something (*or to not stop*):

**Examples:**

“¡**Deja de** mentir tanto!”

“Stop lying so much!”

“**Deja de** hacer eso.”

“Stop doing that.”

**Las redes sociales**: In English, “social media” is singular, but in Spanish, you almost always use plural.

**Examples:**

“**Las redes sociales** pueden ser dañinas.”

“**Social media** can be harmful.”

“No tengo ninguna cuenta de **redes sociales**.”

“I don't have any **social media** account.”

The only exception would be when you are speaking about a specific network.

**Example:**

“Facebook es mi **red social** favorita.”

“Facebook is my favorite **social network**.”

 **SOME HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [Talking about fitness in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Phrases to talk about health & well-being in Spanish](#)

[\(Back to episode list\)](#)

## Quizzes for Episode 10

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 11: Girlfriends Shopping



**Synopsis:**

Sisters Fiorella and Claritza are in the mall doing some shopping. They talk about the prices of a dress on sale, its size, their size, etc. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gitty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Fiorella:** Claritza, ay [mira](#) este vestido, es tan lindo, ¡[lo quiero](#)!

**Fiorella:** Claritza, oh look at this dress, it's so pretty. I want it!

**Claritza:** Sí, estoy de acuerdo, Fiorella. Es muy lindo. Me encanta el color y las flores.

**Claritza:** Yes, I agree, Fiorella. It's very pretty. I love the color and the flowers.

**Fiorella:** Mira la etiqueta, ¿cuánto cuesta?

**Fiorella:** Look at the tag, how much does it cost?

*\*Ella mira la etiqueta \**

*\*She looks at tag\**

**Claritza:** Oh Dios mío, solo cuesta quince dólares, Fiorella.

**Claritza:** Oh my god, it costs only fifteen bucks, Fiorella.

**Fiorella:** ¡Guau! ¡Qué oferta! No es tan caro.

**Fiorella:** Wow! What a deal! It's not too expensive.

**Claritza:** Sí, veo que está en oferta, normalmente cuesta cincuenta dólares.

**Claritza:** Yes, I see that it's on sale, it's normally 50 dollars.

**Fiorella:** ¡Quiero comprar el vestido y usarlo ahora mismo!

**Fiorella:** I want to buy the dress and wear it right now!

**Claritza:** ¿Tienen mi talla? Quiero comprar ese vestido también, pero en un color diferente.

**Claritza:** They have my size? I want to purchase that dress too, but in a different color.

**Fiorella:** Déjame ver, hmmm, ¿cuál es tu talla otra vez? ¿trece?

**Fiorella:** Let me see, hmmm, what's your size again? 13?

**Claritza:** Jajaajajaja, no chica, soy solo talla nueve. ¡Eres tan tonta, hermana!

**Claritza:** Hahahahaha, no girl, I am only a size 9. You're so silly, sis!

**Fiorella:** Solo estoy bromeando contigo Claritza, jejeje... Aquí hay un vestido de tu talla.

**Fiorella:** Just joking with you Claritza, hehehe... Here is a dress your size.

**Claritza:** Ve a la caja y págalo. Te puedes cambiar en el vestidor. Voy a buscar algunas cosas más.

**Claritza:** Go to the register and pay for it. You can change in the dressing room. I am going to look for some more stuff.

**Fiorella:** Aún no, voy a quedarme contigo y buscar una blusa bonita y unas camisetas. También necesitamos comprar algunos zapatos.

**Fiorella:** Not yet, I am going to stay with you and look for a nice blouse and some t-shirts. We also need to buy some shoes.

**Claritza:** El departamento de zapatos está en el tercer piso en este centro comercial, ¿verdad? ¿Tienen un ascensor?

**Claritza:** The shoe department is on the 3rd floor in this mall, right? Do they have an elevator?

**Fiorella:** Sí, tienen un ascensor, pero no funciona, no sé por qué. La escalera mecánica funciona bien.

**Fiorella:** Yes, they have an elevator, but it doesn't work, I don't know why. The escalator works fine.

**Claritza:** ¡Gracias a Dios!

**Claritza:** Thank God!

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Mira:** “Mira” comes from the verb, “Mirar” (to look). When you want to command someone in the *tú* form of the verb, you say, “Mira”. Spanish-speaking natives use this word ALL-THE-TIME!

**Example:**

**"Mira** a este hombre allí"

**"Look** at this man over there"

**Lo quiero**: Lo quiero means, "I want **it**". What's **it**? She is talking about *the dress* (**el** vestido) which is a masculine item, so this is why she used, "**lo**".

Quiero comes from the verb, "querer"(to want/to love). Quiero is the Yo (first person singular) form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

**"Lo quiero"** also means, "I love him". **"La quiero"** means, "I love her".

**Déjame ver**: The word, "Déjame" comes from the verb, "dejar" (to leave/to allow). If you ever want to say, "Leave me alone" you'd say, "Déjame en paz" or "déjame solo".

She said here, "Déjame ver" (let me see)

If you use "deja" by itself, you are using the **imperative/command mood** of the verb in the "tú" (informal second-person singular) form. By adding "me" to the end, it becomes, "leave me".

In Spanish, it's also used to mean, "let me".

**Bromeando**: "Bromeando" is the Adverbial present participle (also called gerund) of the verb, "bromear" (to joke).

"Bromeando" is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### Examples:

hablar (*to speak*) — hablando (speaking)

beber (*to drink*) — bebiendo (drinking)

vivir (*to live*) — viviendo (living)

In this dialogue, the formula is Yo estoy (I am) + gerund.

Yo estoy bromeando = I am joking

Tú estás bromeando = You are joking

Él/Ella está bromeando = He/she is joking

Usted está bromeando = You (formal) are joking

Nosotros estamos bromeando = We are joking

Ustedes están bromeando = You all are joking

Ellos están bromeando = They are joking

\*Some verbs have irregular present participle forms, such as "ir"(going) translated to (yendo), "ser"(being)translated to (siendo), and "estar"(being) translated to, (estando).

**Ve a la caja**: "Ve" is the informal second-person singular (tú) **affirmative imperative** form of the verb, "ir" (to go). You are giving the command, "Go".

"*Ve a la caja.*"

"*Go to the register.*"

**Págalo**: This comes from the verb, "Pagar" (to pay). But when you want to tell someone, "Pay" giving them a direct command, you'll use the imperative/command mode, which is "paga".

So here, she is using the *Tú* form (second-person singular), imperative form of “pagar”+ the pronoun “lo”.

The pronoun “Lo” represents the masculine item, “**El vestido**”(**the** dress).

So, *págalo* means, “pay for it”. The “**it**” is “**the** dress”.

If you were referring to a feminine item, such as a handbag/purse(**La** cartera), then it would be, “*Págala*”.

**Verdad**: Depending on the context, this word can also mean “right” “true”, “really”.

### Examples:

“Mañana es la fiesta, ¿**verdad**?”

“The party is tomorrow, right?”

“¡Es **verdad**! Yo vi todo.”

“It is **true**! I saw everything.”

“De **verdad** extraño a mi mamá.”

“I **really** miss my mom.”

**Tercer piso**: This is how you say, “3rd floor” in Spanish.

Here is a list of *ordinal numbers* in Spanish. Please don't kill yourself trying to remember each one of them. I think knowing the 1st ten should be good enough for a beginner, as you advance, you'll naturally learn the others.

1st: primero

2nd: Segundo

3rd: tercero

4th: cuarto

5th: quinto

6th: sexto

7th: séptimo

8th: octavo

9th: novena

10th: decimo

11th: undécimo (*also decimoprimer and décimo primero*)

12th: duodécimo (*also decimosegundo and décimo segundo*)

13th: decimotercero (*also décimo tercero*)

14th: decimocuarto (*also décimo cuarto*)

15th: decimoquinto (*décimo quinto*)

16th: decimosexto

17th: decimoséptimo

18th: decimoctavo

19th: decimonoveno

20th: vigésimo

21st: vigésimo primero

22nd: vigésimo Segundo

23rd: vigésimo tercero

24th: vigésimo cuarto

30th: trigésimo

31st: trigésimo primero

32nd: trigésimo Segundo

40th: cuadragésimo

50th: quincuagésimo

60th: sexagésimo

70th: septuagésimo

80th: octogésimo

90th: nonagésimo

100th: centesimo

200th: ducentésimo

300th: tricentésimo

400th: cuadingentésimo

500th: quingentésimo

600th: sexcentésimo

700th: septingentésimo

800th: octingésimo

900th: noningentésimo

1,000th: milésimo

2,000th: dosmilésimo

3,000th: tresmilésimo

4,000th: cuatromilésimo

1,000,000,000th: millonésimo

### SOME USEFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Spanish shopping & bargaining vocabulary](#)
- ✓ [Commands in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Clothing Spanish Vocabulary](#)
- ✓ [Understanding lo in Spanish](#)

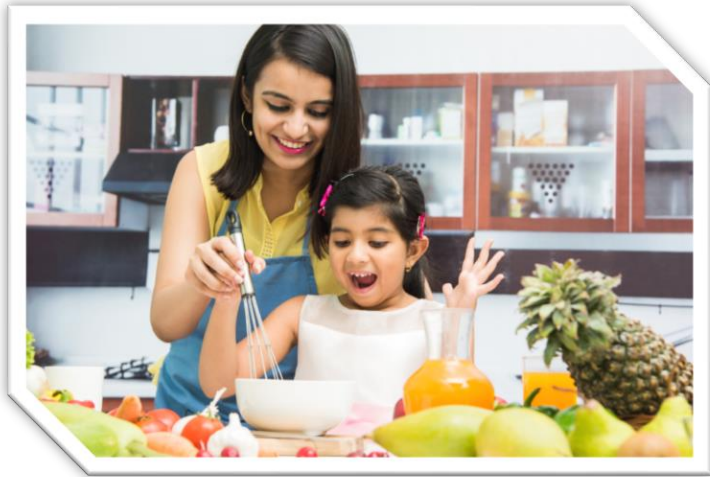
([Back to episode list](#))

### Quizzes for Episode 11

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 12: Cooking with Daughter



## Synopsis:

Lula has just finished doing some shopping. She is in the kitchen and summons her young daughter to come help. While there, the little girl questions her mom about what she purchased and what she is cooking. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

[Click here to learn more and purchase the audio!](#)

**Ninah:** Mami mami, ¿Qué [estás cocinando](#)? ¡Quiero ayudarte! ¿[Puedo ayudarte](#)?

**Ninah:** Mommy mommy, what are you cooking? I want to help you! Can I help you?

**Mommy (Lula):** Claro que sí, princesa. Me vendría bien tu ayuda.

**mamá (Lula):** Of course, princess. I could use your help.

**Ninah:** Ok, mami, ¿qué compraste en el supermercado hoy? ¿Fuiste al supermercado de abajo?

**Ninah:** Okay, mommy, what did you buy in the supermarket today? Did you go to the supermarket downstairs?

**Mommy (Lula):** Sí, fui al supermercado de abajo. El que se encuentra en la esquina. Yo compré un poco de comida y otras cosas. Algunas cosas saludables, como frutas.

**mamá (Lula):** Yes, I went to the supermarket downstairs. The one located on the corner. I purchased some food and other stuff. Some healthy stuff, like fruits.

**Ninah:** Ok, ¡me encantan las frutas! ¿Qué más compraste?

**Ninah:** Okay, I love fruits! What else did you buy?

**Mommy (Lula):** También compré leche, huevos, carne, aceite, mantequilla, y verduras, como brócoli y zanahorias. También compré pollo, carne de res y cerdo.

**mamá (Lula):** I also bought milk, eggs, meat, oil, butter, and vegetables, like broccoli and carrots. I also purchased chicken, beef and pork.

**Ninah:** Hmmmm, no me gustan las verduras. ¿Qué tipo de frutas compraste?

**Ninah:** Hmmmm, I don't like vegetables. What kinds of fruits did you buy?

**Mommy (Lula):** Pero las verduras son buenas para ti, cariño. Compré piñas, mangos, fresas, tomates, etcétera. Sé cuánto amas las fresas, cariño.

**mamá (Lula):** But veggies are good for you, sweetie. I bought pineapples, mangoes, strawberries, tomatoes, etc. I know how much you love strawberries, honey.

**Ninah:** ¡Sí mami! Y me encantan las piñas también.

**Ninah:** Yes mommy! And I love pineapples too.

**Mommy (Lula):** Tengo unas cajas de jugo en estas bolsas de allá. [Ayúdame a sacarlas](#) de las bolsas de compras, por favor.

**mamá (Lula):** I have some boxes of juice in those bags over there. Help me take them out the shopping bags, please.

**Ninah:** Ok mami, voy a hacerlo. ¿Qué es ese olor mami? Huele bastante bien. ¿[Estás friendo](#) algo?

**Ninah:** Okay mommy, I am going to do it. What is that smell mommy? It smells so good. Are you frying something?

**Mommy (Lula):** No realmente, la carne se está cocinando en esa olla en la estufa. Es pollo con un poco de cebollas y pimientos. En la otra olla está el arroz y los frijoles. También, estoy haciendo verduras al vapor.

**mamá (Lula):** Not really, the meat is cooking in that pot on the stove. It's chicken with some onions and peppers. In the other pot is the rice and beans. Also, I am making steamed veggies.

**Ninah:** ¡Qué bien mami! Suena delicioso, no puedo esperar para comer.

**Ninah:** Nice mommy! Sounds delicious, I can't wait to eat.

**Mommy (Lula):** Yo tampoco. También, ¿puedes ayudarme a poner las latas de sardinas en la alacena y las verduras y las frutas en la nevera?

**mamá (Lula):** Me neither. Also, can you help me put the cans of sardines in the cupboard and the veggies and fruits in the refrigerator?

**Ninah:** Ok, mami, ¡yo voy a hacer eso ahora!

**Ninah:** Okay, Mommy, I am going to do that now!

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Estás cocinando:** *Estás* comes from the verb, “Estar”(to be). *Estás* is the Tú form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The word, “Cocinando” comes from the verb, “Cocinar” (to cook).

“Cocinando” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### Examples:

hablar (*to speak*) — hablando (*speaking*)

beber (*to drink*) — bebiendo (*drinking*)

vivir (*to live*) — viviendo (*living*)

**Puedo ayudarte:** *Puedo* comes from the verb, “Poder”(to be able to/can do something). *Puedo* is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The verb “Ayudar”(to help) was after, so this makes it, “Can I help...”(*Puedo ayudar*). She then added the “**te**” to the end of it making it, “*Puedo ayudarte*”(Can I help **YOU**).

Remember, you may also remove the “**te**” at the end and put it before the conjugated verb like so, “**Te** puedo ayudar”.

**Me vendría bien:** When you say “I could use \_\_\_\_” with the intention of indicating that you need or want something, you don’t translate it to “*puedo usar*\_\_\_\_\_” because you won’t necessarily be “using” it physically.

There are different phrases that you may use to convey this idea, such as:

-Me vendría bien, (as used in the story) or

-Me gustaría

-Quiero

*"Me vendría bien un trago."*

*"I could use a drink."*

*"Me gustaría un trago."*

*"I would like a drink."*

*"Quiero un trago."*

*"I want a drink."*

**Qué compraste:** "Qué" means, "what" and she then used the word, "compraste". Compraste comes from the verb, "Comprar" (to buy) and it's used here in the preterite indicative tense.

If you want to say, "I buy" in the present indicative tense, it is "Yo compro" or just, "compro" if you exclude the subject pronoun, "Yo".

This is how the verb, "Comprar"(to buy) is conjugated in the preterite indicative past tense:

**Yo** Compré – I bought

**Tú** Compraste – You bought

**Él/ella** Compró – He/she/ bought

**Usted** Compró – You (formal) bought

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Compramos – We bought

**Ustedes** Compraron-You bought

**Ellos/Ella** Compraron – They bought

**Examples:**

“¿Qué **compraron** en la tienda?”

“What they **bought** in the store?”

“Te **compré** una banana en el supermercado.”

“**I bought** you a banana in the supermarket.”

“**Compramos** nuestros vuelos ayer.”

“**We purchased** our flights yesterday.”

**Fuiste:** This is another example of a verb used in the preterite indicative tense. “*Fuiste*” comes from the verb, “*ir*” (to go). *Fuiste* is the TÚ form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

We have been using the verb “*ir*” (to go) like crazy in this version so Gritty Spanish to talk about what we are going to do especially, using it in the present indicative tense.

For example:

“¿Qué **vas** a hacer?”

“What are you going to do?”

You can say, “Where are you going?”, and it would be, “¿A dónde **vas**?”.

But if you wanted to say, “Where did you go?”, then you have to use the past tense of the verb and say, “¿A dónde *fuiste*?”.

Here is how the verb, “*ir*” (to go) is conjugated in the preterite indicative tense.

**Yo** Fui – I went

**TÚ** Fuiste – you went

**Él/ella** Fue – He/she went

**Usted** Fue- You (formal) went

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Fuimos – We went

**Ustedes** Fueron- You all went

**Ellos/ellas** Fueron – They went

### Examples:

*"**Fui** a la playa anoche."*

*"**I went** to the beach last night."*

*"¿A dónde **fueron**?"*

*"Where **did they go**?"*

*"**Fuimos** a comprar leche anoche."*

*"**We went** to buy milk last night."*

**Fui:** As we mentioned previously, the word "*fui*" comes from the verb "*ir*" (to go). *Fui* is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

### Examples:

*"**Fui** a ver mi cantante favorito hace dos días."*

*"**I went** to see my favorite singer 2 days ago."*

*"Ayer **fui** al gimnasio."*

*"Yesterday **I went** to the gym."*

**El que:** This what's called a "relative pronoun".

Remember pronouns are words that refer to a noun.

Relative pronouns are called "*relative*" because they are "*related*" to a noun that has previously been stated.

The noun that was previously stated is, “**EL supermercado**”(the supermarket) which is a masculine word. So when you are talking about, “The one”, you can use **El** que or **La** que.

### Examples:

“Mi tía, **la que** es dentista, viene a visitarme hoy día.”

“My aunt, **the one** who is a dentist, is coming to visit me today.”

“Mi tío, **el que** es taxista, va a llegar pronto.”

“My uncle, **the one** who is a taxi driver, is going to arrive soon.”

If it's plural, then there are **Las** que, **Los** que.

**Yo compré:** We mentioned the conjugated verb, “compraste” which means, “**you** bought/purchased”, but “compré” means, “**I** bought”. Both are examples of the verb, “comprar”(to buy) used in the preterite indicative tense. Compré is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

### Examples:

“**Compré** una casa ayer.”

“**I bought** a house yesterday.”

“**Compré** un gato la semana pasada.”

“**I purchased** a cat last week.”

**Ayúdame a sacarlas:** If you're in trouble and want to say “Help me”, you'll say, “Ayúdame”.

Where does this word come from?

It's from the verb, "Ayudar"(to help).

So, in Spanish, if you wanted to command someone to help, you just say, "Ayuda". That's the imperative/command of the verb in the *tú* form.

Adding, "**me**" at the end of that command makes it, "Ayúdame"(help me).

If you want to command someone and say, "Call me", you'd use the verb, "llamar"(to call), select the command/imperative form of that verb, "llama", which is the **Tú** form of the verb...

Add, "me" to it, and it makes it, "Lláname".

You'll hear this a lot when someone wants you to call them.

How do you say, "Help him" in Spanish?

Same formula...

**Ayuda + the direct object pronoun.**

Like so:

Ayúdalo

Help her, "Ayúdala"

She then used the full/unconjugated verb, "Sacar"(to take out/to remove).

She also adds the “*Las*” to the end of that verb, making it, “*Sacarlas*”. The “*las*” here represents the “boxes of juice” (*las* cajas de jugos).

Now if it was only one box of juice, she would have said, “*Sacarla*”. The word, “*Cajas*” (boxes) is plural and it's a feminine word, so this is why “*las*” was used. If it were a masculine word, then she would have said, “*lo*” or the plural, “*los*”.

So, instead of “*las cajas de jugo*”, let's say we were talking about “*los chocolates*”, this would be

-Sacar**los** (plural, “the chocolates”)

-Sacar**lo** (singular, “the chocolate”)

**Estás amigo**: *Estás* comes from the verb, “*Estar*” (to be). *Estás* is the *Tú* version of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

“*Friendo*” is the present participle of the verb, “*freír*” (to fry). The present participle in Spanish is verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### **Examples:**

escribir (to write) — escribiendo (writing)

besar (to kiss) — besando (kissing)

bailar (to dance) — bailando (dancing)

ayudar (to help) — ayudando (helping)

**Puedes ayudarme a poner las**: *Puedes* comes from the verb, “Poder”(to be able to/can do something). *Puedes* is the *tú* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

We spoke about the verb, “Ayudar”(to help). Here, she first used the conjugated verb and followed with the full/unconjugated verb, “Ayudar”.

She also added the direct object pronoun, “**me**”, making it, “Can you help **me**”. If you are in trouble, you can also say, “¿Puedes ayudar?”(can you help?) or, “¿Puedes ayudarme?”(can you help **me**) or ¿**Me** puedes ayudar?

She then added another full/unconjugated verb, “Poner”(to put)...Making the whole thing,

“Puedes ayudarme a poner las latas de sardinas en la alacena...”

“Can you help me put the cans of sardines in the cupboard...”

Let's talk about the, “latas de sardinas”(cans of sardines) in this sentence for a second....

Now, let's say she had mentioned the cans of sardines before or/and the kid knew what she was talking about, she could have said, “Puedes ayudarme a poner**las** en la alacena...”

See what was done there? We removed the “Cans of sardines”(Latas de sardinas) and just added “**Las**” in there to represent them.

## **USEFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [Spanish food and cooking terms](#)
- ✓ [Difference between “Vegetales” and “Verduras” in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Talking about different fruits in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Junk food Spanish Vocabulary](#)
- ✓ [Dietary terms in Spanish for Foodies](#)

[\(Back to episode list\)](#)

## **Quizzes for Episode 12**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 13: Flirting with a Woman



## Synopsis:

Jorge is at a mall near his home when he sees Carolina holding a dress. He approaches her and strikes up a conversation, but he is also quick to express his romantic interest in her. This episode will provide you with some examples and ideas if you want to flirt with someone in Spanish. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**\*\*Jorge [está caminando](#) en un centro comercial y ve a una mujer comprando ropa\*\***

*\*\*Jorge is walking around a mall and sees a woman buying clothes\*\**

**Jorge:** Hola, ¿qué tal? ¿Cómo estás esta tarde?

**George:** Hi, what's up? How are you this afternoon?

**Carolina:** Estoy bien, gracias por preguntar. ¿Y tú?  
¿Cómo estás tú?

**Carolina:** I am fine, thanks for asking. And you? How are you?

**Jorge:** Es un placer, no tienes que agradecerme. Estoy bien, solo estoy aquí haciendo compras.

**George:** It's a pleasure, you don't have to thank me. I am fine, just here shopping.

**Carolina:** Estoy haciendo lo mismo.

**Carolina:** I am doing the same.

**Jorge:** Suena bien. Ese vestido en tus manos, va a quedarte bien.

**George:** Sounds good. That dress in your hands, it's going to look good on you.

**Carolina:** ¿En serio? ¿Por qué dices eso?

**Carolina:** Oh really? Why do you say that?

**Jorge:** Por tu tono de piel y tu cabello, y las combinaciones de los colores. A tu novio o esposo va a gustarle.

**George:** Because of your skin tone and your hair, and the combination of the colors. Your boyfriend or husband is going to like it.

**Carolina:** ¿Novio o esposo? Hmmm, bueno, no tengo novio.

**Carolina:** Boyfriend or husband? Hmmm, well, I don't have a boyfriend.

**Jorge:** ¿Por qué no? Eres muy hermosa. Puedo ser tu novio; soy un buen hombre.

**George:** Why not? You are so beautiful. I can be your boyfriend; I am a good man.

**Carolina:** Ay Dios, veo que no pierdes el tiempo. Eres muy atrevido.

**Carolina:** Oh God, I see that you don't waste time. You're very bold.

**Jorge:** Pues, yo sé qué quiero cuando lo veo. Quiero una oportunidad contigo.

**George:** Well, I know what I want when I see it. I want a chance with you.

**Carolina:** Es posible, me gustan los hombres atrevidos como tú, pero, no te conozco.

**Carolina:** It's possible, I like bold men like you, but, I don't know you.

**Jorge:** Podemos conocernos mejor. Podemos intercambiar números de teléfono y hablar más de nosotros.

**George:** We can get to know each other better. We can exchange phone numbers and talk more about us.

**Carolina:** Jejeje, es un buen plan, pero primero, tengo que terminar de hacer mis compras.

**Carolina:** Jejeje, It's a good plan, but first, I have to finish my shopping.

**Jorge:** Ok, no hay problema. Voy a esperar allí por esa puerta. Podemos continuar nuestra conversación.

**George:** Okay, no problem. I am going to wait over there by that door. We can continue our conversation.

**Carolina:** Está bien, voy a estar allí en un segundo. Quiero pagar la ropa primero.

**Carolina:** Okay, I am going to be there in a second. I want to pay for the clothes first.

**Jorge:** Puedo hacer eso, ¿pero puedes darme tu número primero?

**George:** I can do that, but can you give me your number first?

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Está caminando:** Since we are talking about the *third* person, Jorge, this is why the *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb, “Estar” (to be) was used. The conjugated form is, “está”.

The word, “caminando” comes from the verb, “caminar” (to walk).

“Caminando” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### Examples:

jugador (to play) — jugando (playing)

ver (to see) — viendo (seeing)

cantar (to sing) — cantando (singing)

llamar (to call) — llamando (calling)

**Gracias por preguntar:** The Spanish verb for “to ask” is “preguntar”. When you are talking to someone in Spanish, and you want to say “Thank you for...”, you say, “**Gracias por + a Full/Infinitive verb**”, such as “Preguntar”(to ask).

### Examples:

“**Gracias por** venir.”

“**Thanks for** coming.”

“**Gracias por** ayudar.”

“**Thanks for** helping.”

“**Gracias por** decir algo.”

“**Thanks for** saying something.”

**"Gracias por cantar la canción."**

**"Thanks for singing the song."**

**"Gracias por pensar en mí".**

**"Thanks for thinking about me."**

**Lo mismo:** The "lo" here represents the *thing*. The word *mismo* means, "Same", making it "Same thing".

### **Examples:**

**"Es lo mismo."**

**"It is the same thing."**

**"Pensé lo mismo."**

**"I thought the same thing."**

**"Pensé lo mismo que tú."**

**"I thought the same as you."**

**"Más de lo mismo."**

**"More of the same(thing)."**

**Va a quedarte bien:** This is another example where the verb, "ir" (to go) is being used to talk about what you or someone else is **going to do**. So, he is using that verb in the present tense to talk about the future.

"Va" (it's going) is the *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. "The dress" (**El** vestido) is the "third person" here, so this is why "Va" is used.

The verb, "Quedar" means, "to be left/to stay", but in this context, it means, "to fit/to suit". He added the direct

object pronoun, "**te**" at the end of the verb since he is talking directly to her.

If she was in the mirror talking to herself, she would have said, "*Va a quedarme bien*" or, "**Me** va a quedar bien".

For "*va a quedarte bien*", You can also say: "*Se te va a ver bien*".

**Va a gustarle**: Here, he is doing the same thing, using the verb, "*ir*"(to go) to talk about the future using the present tense form the verb, "*ir*"(to go). So now he is talking about her possible boyfriend, this is why he uses the *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb, "*va*"(he is going). The boyfriend is the *third person*.

The verb, "*Gustar*"(to like/to be pleasing to) was used. So, "*Va a gustar*" means, "*He/she is going to like*". He then added "**le**", which can mean, "*him/her*", but she doesn't have to ask "*who?*"(¿Quién?). I mean, she can, if she wants to give him a hard time and have him be more specific, but he specifically said right before, "*Tu novio o esposo*"(your boyfriend or husband).

**Muy hermosa**: The word "*hermosa*" means, "*beautiful*". In here, "*so*" = "*muy*".

You can also say the following for beautiful:

- Eres muy **bella**
- Eres muy **linda**
- Eres muy **bonita**

All of these mean, "*You're very beautiful.*".

Another way of telling a woman she is beautiful is by using the word “*belleza*”, you could say:

“Eres una **belleza**”, but that would mean “You’re a beauty”.

**Quiero cuando lo veo**: *Quiero* is the First-person singular (yo) present indicative form of “*querer*”, which means “to want/to love”.

*Cuando* means, “When”. The word, “*Veo*”(I see) comes from the verb, “*Ver*”(to see). *Veo* is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

If you say, “**lo** veo” by itself, it’s, “I see **it**”. That **it** can be any masculine object. But remember, “**Lo**” can also mean, “**him**”. So if you say that to someone without any context, they will ask you, “¿Qué ves?”(what do you see?).

If you say, “I see **her**”, it’s, “**La** veo”. That same, “**la**” can also be a feminine object, such as, “**la** cara”(the face).

Someone can say, “¿Ves su cara?”(You see her face?) and you can respond, “Sí, **la** veo”, instead of “Sí, veo su cara” (Yes, I see her face).

In the conversation, the guy said, “*Cuando lo veo*”, that “**Lo**”(it) can be anything, a feminine or masculine object, but if we don’t know then it’s going to always be masculine by default.

It’s the same thing as when parents don’t know the sex of a baby, and they refer to the baby as, **el** Niño and not **La** Niña.

**No te conozco**: The word, “*Conozco*”(I know) is from the verb, “*Conocer*”(to know). *Conozco* is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Now, if you want to say, “I know you” it would just be, “Te conozco” adding the, “no” makes it, “I don’t know you” (No te conozco). Sounds like, “Not me you know” right?

As you advance with your Spanish, speaking like this will feel completely normal, because you’ll eventually start to think in Spanish.

There is a blog post on this very topic on the Gritty Spanish blog, “[How to think like a boss in Spanish](#)”, click here to check it out.

How do you say, “Do you know me?”.

You start with yourself, “me”, and use the Tú form of the verb, “Conocer” (to know) and say, “¿Me conoces?”.

### Other examples:

“**Lo conozco** bien.”

“**I know him** well.”

“**No la conocemos** bien.”

“**We don’t know her** well.”

“Me conocen.”

“They know me.”

“**We know each other** well.”

“**Nos conocemos** bien.”

**Podemos conocernos mejor**: Here, he starts with the word, “Podemos” (we can). Podemos comes from the verb, “Poder” (to be able to/can do something). Podemos is the Nosotros/nosotras form of the verb when conjugated in the present indicative tense.

He then used the unconjugated verb, “Conocer”(to know).

But then added the direct object pronoun, “**nos**”, making it, “Podemos conoc**ernos**”(we can know each other). He could have said, “**Nos**” before that conjugated word, “Podemos”(we can) like so, “**Nos** podemos conocer” and it would have meant the same thing.

**Números de teléfono:** Based on everything you've probably learned, you might be tempted to say “Números de teléfono**S**”, but you don't need the “**s**”. To make it plural, you just need the “**s**” after “número”

Número de teléfono (Phone number)

Número**S** de teléfono (Phone numbers)

This almost always happens with compound nouns in Spanish.

Ama de casa= housewife

Ama**S** de casa= housewives

(you don't say “ama**S** de casa**S**”)

Dolor de cabeza = headache

Dolor**ES** de cabeza = headaches

Just something to keep in mind.



## HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Flirting in Spanish made easy](#)
- ✓ [30 love quotes in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Funny Mexican Spanish pickup lines](#)
- ✓ [Hot Spanish Pickup Lines](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

## Quizzes for Episode 13

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 14: The Bank



### **Synopsis:**

Lucia and Natalia were at a store, Lucia spotted a beautiful handbag, but the store does not accept credit cards. She is a bit disappointed. She doesn't trust ATMs so she heads to her bank to take out some money and check her balance. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Lucía:** Natalia, no puedo creer que esa tienda no acepta tarjetas de crédito. Solo efectivo... De verdad quiero esa cartera.

**Lucía:** Natalia, I can't believe that store doesn't accept credit cards. Only cash... I really want that pocketbook.

**Natalia:** La cartera es muy linda, Lucía, estoy totalmente de acuerdo contigo.

**Natalia:** The handbag is very beautiful, Lucia, I totally agree with you.

**Lucía:** ¿Me puedes esperar aquí? Voy a ir a mi banco y sacar un poco de dinero, yo no confío en los cajeros automáticos.

**Lucía:** Can you wait here for me? I am going to go to my bank and take out some cash, I don't trust ATMs.

**Natalia:** Está bien, no hay problema. Voy a estar aquí cuando salgas del banco.

**Natalia:** Okay, no problem. I am going to be here when you leave the bank.

**Lucía:** Voy a estar ahí solo quince minutos, ¿está bien? También tengo que hacer un depósito y consultar mi saldo.

**Lucía:** I am going to be there 15 minutes, okay? I have to also make a deposit and check my balance.

**Natalia:** En vez de aquí, ¿podemos vernos en el restaurante que está a dos manzanas de aquí?

**Natalia:** Instead of here, can we meet at the restaurant two blocks from here?

**Lucía:** Está bien Natalia, no hay problema. Voy a llamarte en pocos minutos.

**Lucia:** Okay Natalia, no problem. I am going to call you in a few minutes.

*\*Lucía ve al cajero...\**

*\*Lucia goes up to the teller.... \**

**Cajero:** Hola y bienvenida al banco Chase.

**Teller:** Hello and welcome to Chase bank.

**Lucía:** Hola y buenas tardes, me gustaría hacer un depósito, consultar mi saldo y sacar un poco de dinero, por favor.

**Lucia:** Hello and good afternoon, I would like to make a deposit, check my balance and take out some money, please.

**Cajero:** Ok, solo necesita completar este formulario para hacer un depósito.

**Teller:** Okay, you just need to fill out this form to make a deposit.

**Lucía:** Ok, ¿pero puedo sacar un poco de efectivo aquí? Olvida la consulta de mi saldo, odio escribir.

**Lucia:** Okay, but may I take out some cash here?  
Forget the checking of my balance, I hate writing.

**Cajero:** Ok, ponga su tarjeta en esa máquina, ingrese su número de PIN y dígame cuánto efectivo necesita.

**Teller:** Okay, put your card in that machine, enter your PIN number and tell me how much cash you need.

**Lucía:** Solo necesito cien dólares, por favor.

**Lucia:** I just need 100 dollars, please.

**Cajero:** Aquí está su efectivo y el recibo. También contiene su saldo. ¿Necesita algo más? ¿Le gustaría comprar unos cheques?

**Teller:** Here is your cash and the receipt. It also contains your balance. Do you need anything else? Would you like to buy some checks?

**Lucía:** No gracias, eso va a ser todo por hoy.

**Lucia:** No thanks, that is going to be all for today.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Tarjetas de crédito:** This means, "Credit cards". This is another example of a compound noun. You only need the "s" after the first part of the term in order to make the plural.

Tarjeta de crédito= credit card

Tarjeta**S** de crédito = credit cards

Tarjeta**S** de crédito**S** would be Incorrect.

**De verdad**: This literally means, “of truth”. The word, “verdad” by itself means, “Truth”. “De verdad” can have different meanings:

- 1) A way to express surprise or disbelief. Use it when you want to say, “Really?” or “for real?”.

**Example:**

**Verenice:** “Me voy a casar en un mes.”

**Verenice:** “I am going to get married in a month.”

**Angelica:** “¿**De verdad**? ¡Felicidades!”

**Angelica:** “**For real**? Congrats!”

- 2) It can also mean “really/truly”

So, when you want to say, “I **really** need to buy a car”, you’ll say, “**De verdad** necesito comprar un carro”.

It also means, “truly”, like when you say, “I am truly sorry”. Sometimes, you’ll see it used at the end of the sentence. “Lo siento, de verdad”.

- 3) True, real, authentic.

**Example:**

“Ese sí que es un jugador de fútbol **de verdad**.”

“That’s what I call a **real** football player.”

**More examples:**

**Jose:** "¡Ganaste el premio mayor!"

**Jose:** "You won the grand prize!"

**Caroline:** "¿De verdad?!"

**Caroline:** "Really?!"

"¡Fue una comida excelente **de verdad!**"

"It was an excellent meal, **indeed!**"

"**De verdad**, quiero ir a Guatemala."

"I **really** want to go to Guatemala."

**Me puedes esperar:** *Puedes*(you can) comes for the verb, "*poder*"(to be able to/can do something). *Puedes* is the *Tú* form (Informal second-person singular) of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The unconjugated verb, "*Esperar*"(to wait) follows.

The pronoun, "me" was used first, to us, it may sound like, "Me can you wait", but means, "Can you wait for me". You may also remove the "**Me**" before the "*puedes*" and add it to the end of the nonconjugated verb, "*esperar*", making it, "*Puedes esperar**me***".

Or you can use the command form of the verb, "*Esperar*"(to wait) and say, *Espera*(wait) or add the **me** to it and make it, "*espérame*"(wait for me).

**Salgas:** A little advanced Spanish is used here.

The word **salgas** is the **present subjunctive** mood of *salir*(to leave) in the second person singular *Tú* form.

The subjunctive is not a tense; rather, it is a mood. Tense refers when an action takes place (past, present, future), while mood merely reflects how the speaker feels about the action.

A mood is a grammatical term which helps categorize verb tenses. Spanish has 3 moods: indicative, imperative, and subjunctive. The subjunctive mood is rarely used in English, but it is widely used in Spanish.

### **Example:**

*"Cuando salgas de tu casa cómprame algo en el supermercado."*

*"When you leave your house buy me something in the supermarket."*

In the above sentence, the subjunctive mood is used because the main clause ("cómprame algo) either indicates the future or is a command. It also refers to an event (the purchasing of something) that has not happened yet in reality, so this would suggest the subjunctive mood.

### **Example of Subjunctive vs indicative:**

*"Cuando salgas de mi casa."* (this is subjunctive):

*"When you go out of my house."*

(in the future.)

*"Cuando sales de mi casa."* (This is indicative)

(Every time you go out of my house.)

**Podemos vernos:** *Podemos* (we can) comes for the verb, “*poder*” (to be able to/can do something). *Podemos* is the *Nosotros/Nosotras* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The infinitive verb is, “*Ver*”(to see). You might be thinking, but wait, “*hey this is not the right verb to use*”, but when talking about wanting to meet up, you can use it. This is like saying “we can **see** each other there”.

Here is the thing, the word “*meet*” has lots of meanings in English, and to convey the same idea in Spanish, you have to use different terms. Not all of them can be translated word by word.

Look at the following examples below:

The word “**meet**” can mean to

1.) “Become acquainted with”, to see and talk to someone for the very first time.

**Example:**

“**Conocí** a mi esposa en la boda de mi hermana.”

“I **met** my wife at my sister’s wedding.”

“*Hemos estado hablando en línea por mucho tiempo. ¡No puedo esperar para **conocer**te en persona!*”

“We have been talking online for so long, I can’t wait to **meet you** in person!”

In here, “*meet*”= *conocer*

2.) Gather, get together with someone (intentionally)

**Examples:**

*"Vamos **a vernos** en tu casa."*

*"Let's **meet** at your house."*

The literal meaning of this is *"let's see each other at your house"*.

*"Vamos **a reunirnos** en tu casa."*

*"Let's gather at your house."*

Or

Vamos a **encontrarnos** en tu casa.

In here meet= *"reunirse"* *"verse"*.

You can't use *"conocer"* (to know) because it is not the first time you will see or talk with someone.

In here, *"meet"*= *"reunirse"*, *"verse"*.

2.) *"Encounter"*; to come together with someone without intending to do so.

*"Odio cuando te **encuentras** a alguien que conoces, pero no puedes recordar su nombre."*

*"I hate when you **meet** someone you know but you can't remember their name."*

In here, *"meet"*= *"encontrarse"*

A perfect example...

Sometimes I'll see a person in the morning, then I'll see them at another time during the day and start a conversation by saying, "*Nos vemos de nuevo.*" (We meet again).

So, back to "*Podemos vernos*"

She added the direct object pronoun, "*nos*" to the end of the verb "*ver*" (to see), making it, "*Podemos vernos*".

She could have also placed the "**nos**" before the *podemos*, making it, "**Nos** podemos ver"

**Ponga**: "*Ponga*"(put) is from the verb, "*Poner*"(to put).

In Spanish, if you wanted to command someone, "*put*", you just say, "*Ponga*"(Formal second-person singular). That's the command/imperative of the verb in the *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

Remember, she is speaking in the *usted* form, so this is why she didn't say, "*Pon*". *Pon* is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the imperative command tense.

### Example:

"**Pon** ese libro en la mesa." (*tú* form)

"**Put** that book on the table."

"**Ponga** ese libro en la mesa." (*usted* form)

"**Put** that book on the table."

When you're learning, it's important to understand the differences between *tú* and *usted*, but don't overthink it when you're in a conversation - just speak.

No one is going to stop you and say, "*Hey, you using the usted form!*" etc. and kill the conversation. Well, maybe if you're speaking to someone else who is learning and they're an absolute grammar snob, maybe...

But if you are using the "*usted form*" too much, a native speaker may say "*háblame tú*" or "*tutéame*", which means that they are telling you to use the *tú* form because there is no need for formality.

**Ingrese su número:** When speaking Spanish, we may have the tendency to use the word, "*Entrar*" (to enter) and say, "*entre su número*".

In this context, "*enter*" = the verb "*ingresar*" (to enter).

Look at them this way if you're confused...

***Entrar*** - when a person enters the room (get in)

***Ingresar*** - when a person enters their username to log in.

in Spanish, you don't say: ***Entra*** tu nombre.

Spanish-speaking natives will say: ***Ingresar*** tu nombre. or "***escribe*** tu nombre", or even "***pon*** tu número". It is common to use the word "*escribe*", which comes from the verb, "*Escribir*" (to write) even when you are typing using a keyboard instead of writing with your hand.

So, in this story, the teller could have said "*escriba su número*" or "*ponga su número*".

"Ingresa" is the "tú" form of the verb used in the imperative/command mood.

The teller is using the *usted* form, so we have:

*Ingrese su número*

If you want to use the *tú* form, you say "**ingresa tu** número".

**Dígame:** Literally this means, *tell me*. Figuratively, it can mean, "*how may I help you*". I've heard people picking up the phone and answer, "Dígame" or the informal, "dime", but where does it come from?

It comes from the verb, "Decir" (to say/to tell). If you ever want to give someone a command and say, "Tell/say", then it would be, "Di".

"Di" is the *tú* form of the verb in the imperative/command mood.

I would hear Spanish-speaking people in my neighborhood say this to each other all the time, "Dime", as an informal way of saying, "What's up" or "how may I help you."

So "Di" is the command and they would add the "me" to it, literally making it, "Tell me".

You'll also hear, "Dímelo" a lot especially in urban communities, which is saying, "tell it to me". See how the "it" (lo) was added in there?

But the Teller used the *Usted* form of the verb in that mood and said, "Diga". Added the direct object pronoun, "**me**", making it, "Tell **me**".

If you'd like to learn more about the command form and how to use it a little, you may [check out this article on the Gritty Spanish blog.](#)

**Le gustaría comprar:** When you want to talk about what you "**WOULD like**", then you use the word, "*gustaría*".

"*Gustaría*" means, *I would like*. This is considered a bit more advanced Spanish, but it's important to talk about what you WOULD like even at this level.

The word *gustaría* is the conditional indicative form of *gustar* in the first-person singular/third person singular.

Remember when we spoke about "*Gustar*"(to be pleasing to)? This is the verb that word comes from.

So, if you want to say, "***I would like a coffee***", it's "***Me gustaría un café***".

So "*Me gustaría*" is the conjugated form the verb, "*Gustar*"(to be pleasing to).

"***Le gustaría comprar***" means, "*Would you like to buy*". If she was speaking informally, she, she would have said, "***Te gustaría comprar...***".

### **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [Talking about money in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [The Magic of The Spanish Subjunctive](#)
- ✓ [Different ways to say that you're broke in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Slang words to talk about money in Spanish](#)

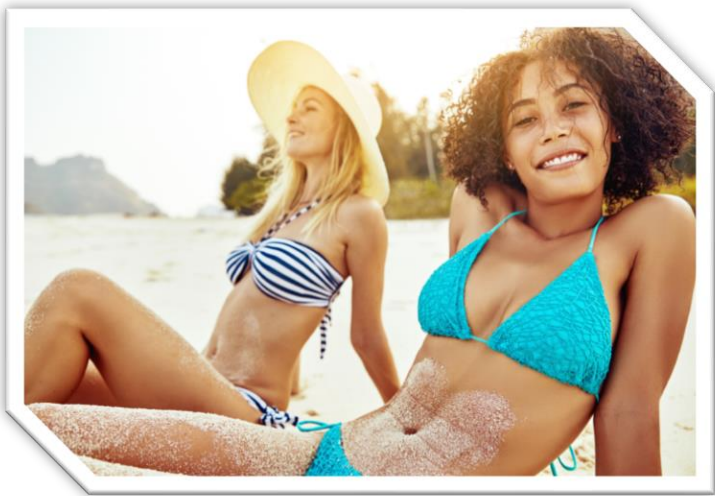
[\(Back to episode list\)](#)

## Quizzes for Episode 14

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 15: Time on the Beach



### **Synopsis:**

Kiara and Luisa are both hanging out on the beach. They are talking about the water. Kiara mentions not being able to swim. Luisa prefers going to the river

and explains why she prefers it. They also make plans to go there. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Kiara:** Luisa, esta playa es increíble.

**Kiara:** Luisa, this beach is incredible.

**Luisa:** Sí, Kiara, [¡lo es!](#) Mira el agua, es tan clara y azul.

**Luisa:** Yes, Kiara, it is! Look at the water, it's so clear and blue.

**Kiara:** Sí, me gustaría entrar al agua, pero no puedo nadar.

**Kiara:** Yes, I would like to go in the water, but I can't swim.

**Luisa:** ¿De verdad? Tienes que aprender a nadar, es muy importante.

**Luisa:** Really? You have to learn how to swim, it's very important.

**Kiara:** Sí, lo sé, [no me quiero ahogar](#) un día. Es que me da miedo el agua.

**Kiara:** Yes, I know, I don't want to drown one day. It's that I am scared of water.

**Luisa:** Jajajaja, esto es tan chistoso.

**Luisa:** Hahahaha, this is so funny.

**Kiara:** No es chistoso, Luisa. Me encanta mirar el agua y disfrutar el sol.

**Kiara:** It's not funny, Luisa. I love looking at the water and enjoying the sun.

**Luisa:** Bueno, me encanta la playa también, pero prefiero el río, para ser honesta.

**Luisa:** Well, I love the beach too, but I prefer the river, to be honest.

**Kiara:** ¿Me pregunto por qué?

**Kiara:** I wonder why?

**Luisa:** Por qué no hay arena. Odio la arena. En el río, puedo comer y no me preocupo por la arena. También odio el agua del océano, tiene demasiada sal.

**Luisa:** Because there is no sand. I hate the sand. In the river, I can eat food and not worry about the sand. I also hate ocean water, it has too much salt.

**Kiara:** Un día tenemos que ir entonces.

**Kiara:** One day we have to go then.

**Luisa:** Sí, me gustaría eso. Podemos ir el martes; tengo algunas amigas que viven cerca del río.

**Luisa:** Yes, I would like that. We can go on Monday; I have some friends who live close to the river.

**Kiara:** De acuerdo, ¿pero podemos ir este fin de semana en vez del martes o durante la semana?

**Kiara:** Okay, but can we go this weekend instead of Monday or during the week?

**Luisa:** Claro, no tengo planes, así que, creo que el sábado será perfecto.

**Luisa:** Sure, I don't have any plans, so, I think that Saturday will be perfect.

--*Fin de la historia*--

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**¡Lo es!**: When you agree with someone, of course, you can say, “*Estoy de acuerdo contigo*”. You can say, “*lo es*” (it is). We say, “*it is*” all the time in English when we agree with someone when that person we’re having a conversation with says something like, “*Esta fiesta es fantástica*” (That party is fantastic).

We normally respond, “Yes, *it’s great*”, but sometimes we will simply say, “Yes, ***it is***”.

When you do this in Spanish, you’ll just say, “*Lo es*”. If it’s not good and you disagree, then you’ll say, “*no lo es*” (It’s not).

As Spanish-language learners, we may ask, “*is it ever **La es** in this situation?*”.

You never, EVER say “***la es***”.

If you say “*la fiesta es divertida*”, and someone answers “*sí, lo es*”, the “*lo*” is replacing “**ser/estar**”, not the **subject** of the sentence.

### Example:

“*La vida es hermosa.*”

“*Life is beautiful.*”

Now remove “*la vida*”, you get “*es hermosa*”...

“*Sí, lo es.*”

“*Yes, it is.*”

The “*lo*” is about “*es*”, not about “*la vida*”.

### Another example:

“*Luisa está enojada.*”

“*Luisa is upset.*”

Now remove “*Luisa*”, you get “*está enojada*”.

“*Sí, lo está.*”

“*Yes, she is.*”

The “**lo**” is about “**está**”; not about “*Luisa*”).

So, it does not matter if the subject or a noun is feminine or masculine, because with “*ser*” and “*estar*” you always use “*lo*”.

NEVER “la”.

How about some **more examples?**

“¿Ella **es** de México?”

“She is from Mexico?”

“Sí, **lo** es.”

“Yes, she is.”

“¿María está en problemas?”

“Maria is in trouble?”

“Sí, *lo* está”

“Yes, she is.”

Makes perfect sense, yes?

**No me quiero ahogar**: Lets first talk about the word, “Quiero”(I want). Quiero comes from the verb, “Querer”(to want). The infinitive verb, “Ahogar” means, “To drown”.

So if you say, “Me quiero ahogar”, this means, “I want to drown”, “I don’t want to down”, will be, “**No** me quiero ahogar”.

If you left it as, “No quiero ahogar”, it will be perfectly understood, but incomplete. For such a phrase, you need to add the pronoun, “**me**” to it.

This is something you’ll usually just learn it by heart/practice and forget the reasoning/logic behind it.

**Me preocupo**: The word, “Preocupo”(I worry) comes from the verb, “Preocupar”(to worry). *Preocupo* is used in the Yo form (first-person singular) of the verb in the indicative present tense.

Here, this verb is used reflexively, when it is, the verb, becomes, “Preocuparse”(to worry oneself).

Spanish uses **reflexive pronouns** a lot more frequently than English. In English, you say “I dress”, in Spanish you must say “I dressed myself”, **to make it clear that the action is directed back at the subject.**

“Me preocupo (por algo)” is like saying “I worry myself” (about something”).

“Me preocupo por ti.”  
“I worry (myself) about you.”

“Tú siempre te preocupas demasiado.”  
“You always worry (yourself) too much.”

In Spanish, you never really say, “Yo preocupo” when talking about yourself, you have to use a reflexive pronoun, such as “**me**”+ **the conjugated verb**.

**Será**: So far we’ve seen a bunch of examples in context about talking about the future using the verb, “ir”(to go) in the present indicative tense. We said we can use it to talk about what you or someone else is **GOING to do!**

Using the word, “Será” is the verb, “Ser”(to be) used in the future indicative tense. This is the *Él/ella/usted* form.

To use, “ser” (to be) in the future tense to talk about what **you’re going to do**, you’ll say, for example:

**“Voy a ser bueno ahora.”**

**“I am going to be good now.**

We would say the same thing in the future tense like so,  
**“Seré bueno ahora”(I’ll be good now).**

So, when you are talking about the future indicative tense, it’s no longer what you or someone else is **GOING to**, it’s what you or someone else **WILL** do.

So, when Luisa says, “Creo que el sábado **será** perfecto”.

She is saying, “I believe that Saturday **WILL** be perfect”.

Será is used in the third person(él/ella/usted) form because, Saturday is the subject, it’s the 3rd “Person”.

Here is how the verb, “ser”(to be) is conjugated in the future indicative tense:

**Yo Seré** – I **will** be

**Tú Serás** - you **will** be

**Él/ella/ Será** – She/he **will** be

**Usted Será**- You (formal) **will** be

**Nosotros/Nosotras Seremos** – We **will** be

**Ustedes Serán**= You all **will** be

**Ellos/Ellas Serán** – They **will** be

Here is how the verb, “Hablar”(to talk) is conjugated in the future indicative tense:

**Yo hablaré** – I **will** talk

**Tú hablarás** - you **will** talk

**Él/ella** hablará – She/he **will** talk

**Usted** hablará -You (formal) will talk

**Nosotros/Nosotras** hablaremos – We **will** talk

**Ustedes** hablarán= You all will talk

**Ellos/Ellas** Hablarán – They **will** talk

When you're conjugating verbs in the future indicative tense, you'll use fewer words.

Check out the future conjugations of three common verbs: **viajar**, **conocer**, and **escribir**.

To form the simple future tense is very easy. Simply add the correct ending to the infinitive of the verb. All verb conjugations (**-ar**, **-er**, and **-ir**) have the same endings in the simple future tense.

## Spanish Simple Future Endings

| Subject                  | Ending | Example using <i>Hablar</i> (to talk) |
|--------------------------|--------|---------------------------------------|
| yo                       | -é     | Hablaré (I will talk)                 |
| tú                       | -ás    | Hablarás (You will talk)              |
| usted, él, ella          | -á     | Hablará (He/she will talk)            |
| nosotros                 | -emos  | Hablaremos (We will talk)             |
| Vosotros (used in Spain) | -éis   | Hablaréis (You will talk)             |
| ustedes, ellos, ellas    | -án    | Hablarán (They will talk)             |

**De acuerdo:** To put it simply, “De acuerdo” means “in agreement,” as in “I’m in agreement with you” or “I agree”. This is another word you may use, when you want to say, “Okay”, or “all right”, in Spanish.

## **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [Understanding “lo” in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Spanish beach vocabulary](#)
- ✓ [Learn about reflexive verbs in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

## **Quizzes for Episode 15**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 16: Sightseeing



## Synopsis:

This is another episode featuring best girlfriends on vacation in Mexico. The two had spent about 8 days there and only have 3 more left. The “sad” thing was, they spend almost their entire time on the beach drinking and didn’t get to do any sightseeing. This episode is about them making some minor plans on what to do before leaving the country.

[\(Back to episode list\)](#)

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

[Click here to learn more and purchase the audio!](#)

**Mariana:** María, estas son **unas vacaciones** maravillosas.

**Nunca olvidaré** estas vacaciones increíbles.

**Mariana:** Maria, this is an amazing vacation. I will never

forget this awesome vacation.

**María:** Estoy de acuerdo contigo, pero recuerda, tenemos que hacer un poco de turismo. Solo nos quedan tres días aquí.

**Maria:** I agree with you, but remember, we have to do some sight-seeing. We only have 3 days left here.

**Mariana:** Sí, y estoy muy triste por eso, no podemos estar solo en la playa bebiendo y ya...

**Mariana:** Yes, and I am very sad about that, we can't only be on the beach drinking and that's it...

**María:** Jajajaja, bueno, tenemos que visitar esa estatua famosa en la ciudad.

**Maria:** Hahahaha, well, we have to visit that famous statue in the city.

**Mariana:** Así es, podemos ir mañana en la tarde o temprano en la mañana.

**Mariana:** That's right, we can go tomorrow afternoon or early in the morning.

**María:** Está bien, y después de eso, podemos tomar un bote a esa isla. ¿Cómo se llama esa isla otra vez? No puedo recordar el nombre.

**Maria:** Okay, and after that, we can take a boat to that island. What's the island called again? I can't remember the name.

**Mariana:** Se llama Isla Mujeres.

**Mariana:** It's called Lady Island.

**María:** ¡Ese es el nombre! Podemos ir allá el viernes.

**Maria:** That's the name! We can go there on Friday.

**Mariana:** ¿Crees que necesitamos un guía de turismo? Hay otros lugares que quiero visitar.

**Mariana:** You think we need a tour guide? There are other places I want to visit.

**María:** ¿Cómo cuáles?

**Maria:** Like where?

**Mariana:** Todavía no estoy segura, pero tenemos un mapa, muestra en dónde está todo. Solo necesitamos preguntar a la gente si no sabemos exactamente a dónde ir.

**Mariana:** I am not sure yet, but we have a map, it shows where everything is. We just need to ask people if we don't know where to go exactly.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Nunca olvidaré:** The word “*nunca*” means, “*never*”. “*Olvidaré*” (I will forget) is another example of a verb being used in the future indicative tense. *Olvidaré* is the Yo form of the verb in that tense.

You can also say, “*Nunca voy a olvidar*”(I am never going to forget), that's perfectly fine too, you're just using the present tense of the verb, “*ir*” to talk about what you or someone else is **going to do**. future Indicative tense is what you or someone else **WILL do**.

Here is how the verb, “*Olvidar*”(To forget) is conjugated in the future indicative tense:

**Yo** Olvidaré – I **will** forget

**Tú** Olvidarás – You **will** forget

**Él/Ella** Olvidará – She/He/**will** forget

**Usted** Olvidará- You (formal) Will forgets

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Olvidaremos – We **will** forget

**Ustedes** Olvidarán – You all **will** forget

**Ellos/Ellas** Olvidarán – They **will** forget

### Examples:

“**No** me **olvidarás**, ¿verdad?”

“You **will not** forget me, right?”

“Carlos **nunca olvidará** nada.”

“Carlos **will never forget** anything.”

“**No olvidaremos** esa época en Argentina.”

“**We will not forget** that time in Argentina.”

**Recuerda:** This comes from the verb, “*Recordar*” (to remember). When you want to give a command in the *tú* form, using the verb, “*Recordar*”, you say, “*Reverda*”.

If you want to command them and say, “*Remember me*”, just say the command and add the, “**me**” and it becomes, “**Recuérdame**”.

When you're speaking to Spanish-speaking natives, and you didn't hear a word or two, and you say, "*repíte*", you're giving them a command to repeat.

"*repíte*" comes from the verb, "*repetir*" (to repeat). It's the *Tú* form of Imperative/ command mood.

Sometimes, you'll say, "*repeat it*", then you say, "*repítelo*", don't forget to say, "*Please*" (*Por favor*).

You can even get more specific, and say "*repítemelo*", which is saying "*repeat it to me*".

Repíte – Repeat

Repítelo - Repeat it/ Repeat that

Repítemelo - Repeat it to me

You could do the same thing with "*recuerda*"

Recuerda – Remember

Recuérdalo - Remember that

Recuérdame - Remember me

Recuérdamelo - Remember that to me

You may read more about the command form in [this blog post](#) on our blog!

**Solo nos quedan tres días:** The word, "*quedan*" comes from the verb, "*Quedar*" (to be left /to stay). "*Quedan*" is the *Ellos/Ellas* form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

Solo = Just.

3 days are left, so this is why, it's *quedan*, the days are plural.

In this context, “left”= quedan

3 days left= quedan 3 días

So far, we have solo \_\_\_\_ quedan tres días. The “nos” is still missing there. Why is it important? because if you leave it out you would be saying “only 3 days left”... You are not saying **who** has 3 days left. By adding the pronoun “nos”(us/we), you make that clear.

We could have the following:

-Solo quedan 3 días = There are only 3 days left

-Solo **me** quedan (a mí) 3 días = I only have 3 days left

-Solo **te** quedan (a ti) 3 días = You only have 3 days left

-Solo **le** quedan (a él, a ella) 3 días = He/she only has 3 days left

-Solo **nos** quedan (a nosotros) 3 días = We only have 3 days left

-Solo **les** quedan (a ustedes) 3 días a = you all only have 3 days left

-Solo **les** quedan (a ellos) 3 días = they only have 3 days left

If you say “solo faltan 3 días”, this sounds more like an answer:

### Example:

“¿Cuánto falta para que por fin nos vayamos?”

“How long before we finally leave?”

*"Solo faltan 3 días."*

*"Only 3 days left."*

You could add a "*para*" after "*solo faltan 3 días*", and it would mean a different thing.

### Example:

*"Solo faltan 3 días **PARA** tu cumpleaños."*

*"Only three days left **for** your birthday."*

*"Solo **faltan** dos meses **para** mi boda."*

*"Only two months left for my wedding."*

The formula for that one would be:

**Faltar** (time unit) **para**= (time unit) left for...

**Bebiendo y ya:** *Bebiendo* is from the verb, "*Beber*"(to drink).

"*Bebiendo*" is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### Examples:

jugar (to play) — jugando (playing)

ver (to see) — viendo (seeing)

cantar (to sing) — cantando (singing)

llamar (to call) — llamando (calling)

Y – means “And”

“Ya”, has different meanings.

Here are a few,

### **Ya – Now**

“¡Hazlo ya!”

“Do it now!”

### **Ya- already**

“Él ya se había ido cuando llegué.”

“He had already left when I arrived.”

### **Ya - No longer**

“Ya no te amo.”

“I no longer love you.”

However, when the words, “y”+ ya” are used together, the meaning is “that’s it” and “that’s the end to it”.

### **Example:**

“¿Entonces, solo vendrás a mi casa **y ya?**”

“So, you’ll just come to my house **and that’s it?**”

**No puedo recordar:** *Puedo* comes from the verb, “Poder” (to be able to/can do something). *Puedo* is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The verb, “Recordar” means, “to remember”.

You can also reflexively use the verb and say, “No me acuerdo el nombre”(I don’t remember the name).

**Estoy tan emocionada:** *Estoy*(I am) comes from the verb, “*Estar*”(to be). *Estoy* is the Yo form of the verb, used in the present indicative tense.

Tan = So

*Emocionada* means *excited*. It’s a woman saying this, so it’s going to be *emocionada*. If it were a male, then it would be *emocionado*.

### Example:

“She is very **excited** to meet you.”

“Ella está muy **emocionada** de conocerte.”

Don’t get “*Emocionada*” confused with the word, “*Exitado/a*”. *Exitado* could mean aroused sexually.

Sometimes, when learning Spanish, we tend to use words we think mean something, but don’t mean what we think. We call those, “*False friends*”.

You can read a post on our Gritty Spanish blog about false friends by [clicking this link!](#)

## HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Talking about the future in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Ya in Spanish and its uses](#)
- ✓ [List of Spanish-speaking countries](#)
- ✓ [15 of the most important Spanish verbs](#)
- ✓ [Essential Spanish phrases](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

## Quizzes for Episode 16

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 17: Talking about a Movie



## **Synopsis:**

Javier and Elías are outside hanging out when Javier spots a poster of a new movie. He tries to convince Elias to go with him and his girlfriend the following week to check it

out, but Elías is a bit worried that the movie is going to suck. He is also worried about the pricing of snacks at cinemas and doesn't want to spend too much. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Javier:** Mira a ese póster en la pared Elías, quiero ver esa película.

**Javier:** Look at that poster on the wall Elías, I want to see that movie!

**Elías:** Yo también, [quiero verla](#), pero no estoy tan seguro aún.

**Elías:** Me too, I want to see it, but I am not so sure yet.

**Javier:** Voy a salir con mi novia la próxima semana a cenar, podemos ir después. ¿Qué vas a hacer el próximo sábado?

**Javier:** I am going to go out with my girlfriend next week to dinner, we can go after. What are you doing next Saturday?

**Elías:** Nada [en absoluto](#).

**Elías:** Nothing at all.

**Javier:** Bueno, tú y Malena pueden ir con nosotros...

**Javier:** Well, you and Malena can come with us...

**Elías:** Voy a [pensarlo](#). ¿[Leíste las críticas](#) sobre esa película? No quiero pagar catorce dólares por una película que apesta.

**Elías:** I am going to think about that. Did you read the reviews about that movie? I don't want to pay 14 dollars for a movie that sucks.

**Javier:** No leí las críticas, pero hay mucha gente que dice que es chistosa. Quiero comprobarlo por mí mismo.

**Javier:** I did not read the reviews, but there's a lot of people that say it's funny. I want to check it out for myself.

**Elías:** Bueno, voy a mirar unas críticas en YouTube.

**Elías:** Well, I am going to watch some reviews on YouTube.

**Javier:** No, no hagas eso, vas a arruinar la película. Oí que tiene un final sorpresa.

**Javier:** No, don't do that, you are going to ruin the movie. I heard that it has a surprise ending.

**Elías:** Está bien, también estoy preocupado por el precio de la comida. Las palomitas y dulces son demasiado caros. Tengo que ahorrar dinero.

**Elías:** Okay, I am also worried about the price of the food. The popcorn and candy are too expensive. I have to save money.

**Javier:** Elías, solo ven con nosotros el sábado que viene. ¿Por qué eres tan tacaño? Va a ser divertido.

**Javier:** Elías, just come with us next Saturday. Why are you so cheap? It's going to be fun.

**Elías:** Voy a considerarlo. ¿Te gustan los actores de esa

película?

**Elías:** I am going to consider it. Do you like the actors in that movie?

**Javier:** Algunos de ellos son buenos actores. Uno de ellos **ganó** un premio por su papel en su última película.

**Javier:** Some of them are good actors. One of them won an award for his role in his last movie.

**Elías:** Está bien, voy a ir. Voy a **preguntarle** a mi novia si quiere ir.

**Elías:** Okay, I am going to go. I am going to ask my girlfriend if she wants to go.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Quiero verla:** “Quiero”(I want) comes from the verb, “Querer”(to want/to love). Quiero is the verb used in the Yo (first person singular) form in the present indicative tense.

The verb, “Ver” means, “to see”.

They were talking about *the move* (**la** película), instead of saying, “Quiero ver la película”.

“Quiero ver**la**”(I want to see **it**), what's **it**? “**La** película”.

Have you ever thought about using Spanish language movies to help you improve your Spanish? We listed a few

of them in this blog post on the Gritty Spanish blog. **[Check it out!](#)**

**This is another great post** about using Spanish language movies to learn Spanish.

**En absoluto:** You can use this phrase when you want to say, “At all”, “Absolutely not”, “not in the slightest”, etc.

**Examples:**

“No quiero papas fritas con mi hamburguesa **en absoluto**.”

“I don’t want French fries on my burger **at all**.”

“No me importa **en absoluto**.”

“I don’t mind **at all**.”

**Pensarlo:** The verb used here is, “Pensar”(to think) and the “lo” was added to the end of it. The “lo” represents “it”/ “that”(the thing that he is going to think about). In other contexts, you can also say “pensar en eso”.

**Pensar en eso** = Use it when you are thinking about something specific.

**Example:**

“Sé que hace daño fumar tanto, pero prefiero **no pensar en eso**.”

“I know it is harmful to smoke this much, but I rather not to **think about that**.”

**Pensarlo** = Use it when you want to tell someone that you need time to evaluate/decide something.

**Example:**

**Pablo:** ¿Quieres ser mi novia?

**Pablo:** Do you want to be my girlfriend?

**María:** Voy a **pensarlo**.

**María:** I am going to **think about it**.

**Leíste las críticas:** “*Leíste*”(You read) comes from the verb, “*Leer*”(to read). *Leíste* is the *Tú* form conjugated in the preterite indicative tense.

“***Leíste las críticas***” means, “***You read the reviews***”.

If you wanted to say, “*I read the reviews*” in the present indicative tense, then it's,

“***Leo las críticas***”.

This is how the verb, “*Leer*”(to read) is conjugated in the preterite indicative tense.

**Yo** Leí – I read

**Tú** Leíste – You read

**Él/Ella/** Leyó -She/he read

**Usted** Leyó – You (formal) read

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Leímos – We read

**Ustedes** Leyeron- You all read

**Ellos/Ellas** Leyeron – They read

**No leí las críticas:** “*Leí*”(I read) comes from the verb, “*Leer*”(to read). *Leí* is the *Yo* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

He could have also left out the word “*críticas*” and said,

"No **las** leí."

"I didn't read **them**."

Las represents, "**Las** críticas."

**Examples** of the verb, "leer" (to read) used in the preterite indicative tense.

"**Leí** ese libro ayer."

"**I read** that book yesterday."

"¿**Leíste** mis ejemplos el otro día?"

"**Did you read** my examples the other day?"

**Mucha Gente**: I know I've said, "mucha **persona**" when I wanted to say this in the past. You can translate the word, people to either "gente" or "personas". "Gente" is a collective noun, but "personas" can be "una persona" (a person) or *unas/ algunas personas* (some people) or *muchas personas* (lots of people/ a lot of people).

-Mucha gente dice (**correct**)

-Muchas gentes dicen (**incorrect**)

-Muchas gente dicen (**incorrect**)

-Muchas personas dicen (**correct**)

-Mucha personas dice (**incorrect**)

## **Comprobarlo por mí mismo:**

Let's talk about the following...

### **Por sí mismo**

-by him/her himself

-For his/herself

## Por sí mismos

- by themselves
- on their own

As a new learner, you may have the urge to say, "*quiero verla por mí mismo*", which would be incorrect in this context, but people will understand you.

"*Por mí mismo*" could mean "*for myself*", but with the meaning of "*independent/alone*".

### Example:

*"This is a decision that I have to make for myself."*

*"Es una decisión que tengo que tomar por mí mismo."*

Or

*"Es una decisión que tengo que tomar yo solo."*

You can't translate the phrase, "*I want to see it/check it out for myself*" word by word. It works as a single term.

See for myself = Comprobarlo por mí mismo.

See for yourself= Comprobarlo tú mismo

### Example:

*"Dicen que Italia es un país hermoso, pero **quiero comprobarlo por mí mismo.**"*

*"They say Italy is a beautiful country, but **I want to see it for myself.**"*

**No hagas eso**: The word *hagas* is from the verb, “*Hacer*” (to do /to make). *Hagas* is the *Tú* form of the negative imperative command mood. The affirmative imperative in the *tú* form would be, “*haz*”.

**Example:**

“**Haz** la cama.”

“**Make** the bed.”

So, if you want to say, “**Don’t make** the bed”, you don’t say, “**No haz** la cama”.

You’d say, “No *hagas* la cama”, instead.

“No *hagas* eso” means, “Don’t do that”.

Here are a couple of easy examples of how to use negative *tú* commands:

“No **compres** la manzana.”

“**Do not buy** the apple.”

“No **aprendas** español.”

“**Do not learn** Spanish.”

“¡No **escribas** en la mesa!”

“**Do not write** on the table!”

**Ven con nosotros**: “Ven” is another command. This comes from the verb, “*Venir*” (to come). Ven is the imperative *Tú* command.

**Examples:**

"Oye, **ven** aquí."

"Hey, **come** here."

"Mañana, **ven** a la playa conmigo."

"Tomorrow, **come** to the beach with me."

So how do you say, "**Don't** come"? Simply, "No vengas".

"Vengas" is negative command, Tú form.

### Example:

"**Don't come** to my party."

"**No vengas** a mi fiesta."

**Ganó:** This is from the verb, "Ganar"(to win/to earn).  
"Ganó"(he/she/usted won) is the Él/ella/usted form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense. They are talking about one of the actors who had won the award.

This is how the verb, "Ganar"(to win/to earn) is conjugated in the preterite past tense:

**Yo** Gané – I won

**Tú** Ganaste – You won

**Él/Ella/** Ganó – He/she won

**Usted** Ganó- You (formal) won

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Ganamos – We won

**Ustedes** Ganaron - You all won

**Ellos/Ellas** Ganaron – They won

**Preguntarle:** The verb used is, "Preguntar"(to ask).

Ask (request) = pedir

Ask (inquiry) = preguntar

The indirect object pronoun, “Le” is used at the end of the verb, this can be “*him/her*”.

This makes “*preguntarle*”, “ask her”

Voy a preguntarle (a mi novia)= I am going to ask her.

The Spanish indirect object pronouns are: **me**, **te**, **le** in the singular, and **nos**, **os**, **les** in the plural. They can replace the preposition a (meaning to) + noun.

### **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [7 funny Spanish movies for language learners](#)
- ✓ [8 great Spanish-language movies](#)
- ✓ [Learning Spanish through movies](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### **Quizzes for Episode 17**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



## Episode 18: The Funeral



### Synopsis:

This episode takes place at the wake of Tomas' grandfather, Edgardo. Andrés, an old friend pulls him to the side and offers his condolences. He also asks about how the rest of his family is taking on this great loss. The funeral is scheduled for the next day. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Andrés:** Oye Tomás, [ven aquí](#) por un momento. [Lamento tu pérdida](#). Mis condolencias, para ti y tu familia. [Déjame darte](#) un abrazo hermano...

**Andrés:** Hey Thomas, come here for a moment. I am sorry for your loss. Accept my condolences, you and your family. Let me give you a hug brother....

**Tomás:** Está bien Andrés. Muchas gracias. Yo aprecio el apoyo en este momento difícil. Gracias por venir.

**Thomas:** It's okay Andrés. Thank you very much. I appreciate the support in this difficult time. Thanks for coming.

**Andrés:** No hay problema, estoy aquí para acompañarte a ti y a tu familia. Me imagino que esto debe ser difícil para todos.

**Andrés:** No problem, I am here for you and your family. I imagine that this must be tough for everyone.

**Tomás:** Sí, ha sido muy difícil. Mi abuelito era un gran hombre. Él vivió una gran vida y murió hasta los noventa y cinco años.

**Thomas:** Yes, it has been very difficult. Grandpa was a great man. He lived a great life and died until 95 years old.

**Andrés:** Sí, él vivió una vida plena, gracias a Dios por eso. Descanse en paz.

**Andrés:** Yes, he lived a full life, thank God for that. Rest in peace.

**Tomás:** ¿Después del velorio, tú y tu esposa van a venir a la casa?

**Thomas:** After the viewing, are you and your wife going to come by the house?

**Andrés:** Sí, definitivamente vamos a ir allí. Quedemos ver al resto de la familia y dar el pésame. Sé que no vamos a ver y hablar con todos aquí.

**Andrés:** Yes, we are definitely going to go there. We want to see the rest of the family and express our condolences. I know we are not going to see and speak to everyone here.

**Tomás:** Me da gusto saber que Elena y tú van a venir a la casa. Mañana es el funeral, ¿tú y tu esposa van a venir allá también?

**Thomas:** I am happy to know that you and Elena are going to come to the house. Tomorrow is the funeral, you and your wife going to come there as well?

**Andrés:** Sí, Thomas, vamos a estar allí. ¿Dónde va a ser, de nuevo?

**Andrés:** Yes, Andres, we are going to be there, where is it going to be again?

**Tomás:** Es bueno saberlo. Lo van a enterrar en el cementerio cerca de ese parque famoso. Está situado como a una hora y media de aquí. Voy a darte la dirección exacta después.

**Thomas:** Good to know. He is going bury at the cemetery close to that famous park. It's located like an hour and a half away from here. I am going to give you the exact address later.

**Andrés:** Ok, suena bien. Entonces, ¿cómo lo están tomando tu esposa y los niños? ¿Están bien todos?

**Andrés:** Okay, sounds good. So, how is your wife and

the children taking it? Are they all okay?

**Tomás:** Lo están llevando bien, es difícil, pero son fuertes.

**Thomas:** They are holding up well, it's tough, but they are strong.

**Andrés:** Ok, voy a dejarte para hablar con [los demás](#) y vamos a hablar más tarde en tu casa.

**Andrés:** Okay, I am going to leave you to speak to the others and we are going to chat later at your house.

--Fin de historia--

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**[Ven aquí:](#)** “Ven” is a command. This comes from the verb, “Venir”(to come).

Ven is the imperative Tú command mood.

**Examples:**

“Oye, **ven** conmigo.”

“Hey, **come** with me.”

**[Lamento tu pérdida:](#)** When someone dies and you want to tell their loves ones “I am sorry for your loss”, you have a few options:

“Mi más sentido pésame” or “Lamento tu pérdida”.

Please accept my condolences = *Mi más sentido pésame/ Te doy mi más sentido pésame.*

“*Acepta mis condolencias*” is less used (but it is used).

If you are going to use this word (*condolencias*), usually people simply say “*Mis condolencias*”. If you want to use the “*please accept*”, it is common to hear “*por favor acepta mi pésame*”.

There is also the variation of just “*mi sentido pésame*”.

**Just as a note** - Some people might consider “*el pésame*” and all its variations a bit old fashioned (it is also more formal than informal), so you could just say a simple “*Lo siento*” “*Lo lamento*”, “*I am sorry for your loss*” part is implied.

Or

“***Siento mucho la muerte*** de...”

Still, no doubt you will hear the word “*pésame*” in some variation in every funeral or veiling ceremony.

**Déjame darte**: *Déjame* is from the verb, “*Dejar*” (to leave/to let/ to allow).

If you ever want to give someone a command to “*let*” you do something, then you first say, “*Deja*” that’s the *tú* of the verb, “*Dejar*” used in the imperative command mood, but “*Let*” who? Me!

This is why he added the “*me*” to the command, which makes it, “***Déjame***”(Let me).

*Dar* is a Spanish verb that means, "To give", so he completes it by adding, "*dar*" right after, "Let me give". This still won't be a complete sentence. He then added, "**te**" which means "you" to the end of the verb, "*Dar*", which makes it, "Let me give you a hug", as he says in the story.

**Me imagino:** "*Imaginarse*" is the compound of the infinitive verb, "*imaginar*" (to imagine, to suppose) and the pronoun **se**. The pronoun "me" was used in the conversation.

To conjugate a pronominal verb, we always have to use pronouns.

### Examples:

(Yo) **Me** imagino = I imagine  
(tú) **Te** imaginas = you imagine  
(él/ella) **Se** imagina = he/she imagines  
(usted) **Se** imagina = you (formal) imagine  
(nosotros) **Nos** imaginamos = we imagine  
(ustedes) **Se** imaginan = you all imagine  
(ellos) **Se** imaginan = they imagine

"*Imaginar*" is a transitive verb, but can also become a pronominal verb ("*imaginarse*").

"*Imaginarse*" is a pronominal verb that can also be translated to "to imagine".

a) To assume/to suppose

### Example:

*"Me imagino que ella no vino porque no la dejó su mamá."*

*"I suppose that she didn't come because her mom didn't let her."*

b) To imagine

### **Example:**

*"¿Te imaginas un mundo sin guerras?"*

*"Can you imagine a world without wars?"*

He could have said:

*"Imagino que esto debe ser difícil para todos"*, but he said  
*"Me imagino que esto debe ser difícil para todos."*

The pronominal version (*imaginarse*; *"me imagino"*) emphasizes the involvement/participation of the subject in the action.

**ha sido**: This is more "advanced" Spanish, but let me explain it a little.

You know when we say in English, "You've", "I've", "She/he has", "They've", "We've"?

Remember when we spoke about, "*Hay*" (there is/is there) and we said that it comes from the auxiliary verb, "*Haber*" (to have).

In this particular story, the **present perfect** form of the verb is used.

This is how it's conjugated in that form in the present tense:

**Yo** He – I've

**Tú** Has – You've (Informal)

**Usted** Ha – You've(formal)

**Él/Ella** Ha – She/he has

**Nosotros** Hemos – We've

**Ellos/Ellas** Han – They've

In the story, *the third person*, *Él/El* of the verb, "*haber*" was used, it's "**ha**".

**Haber** is always followed by a second verb, in this case, it's "*Ser*"(to be), but we have to use the past *Past Participle* of the verb, so it becomes, "*sido*".

Together, "*Ha sido*" is, "*It has been*" in this context. If they were talking about someone else, it still would have been, "*ha sido*"(he /she has been), or speaking formally to say, "*You've been*".

if you wanted to say, "*I've been good.*", it will be, "*He sido bueno*".

If you want to learn more about the present perfect, **[you may click this link](#)** to read more on the Gritty Spanish blog!

**Era:** *Era*" is form the verb, "*Ser*"(to be). "*Era*" is the "*Yo*" form AND also the "*Él/Ella/Usted*" form. In this case, he is talking about the man how had died in the Imperfect tense.

You won't see the imperfect tense used too much in this version of Gritty Spanish since it's more advanced, but it's still good to keep in mind.

**The imperfect tense** is used to refer to actions in the past that occurred repeatedly, here are some examples.

*"I used to walk every day."*  
*"Yo **caminaba** cada día"*

The imperfect tense is also used to refer to actions in the past that occurred over an extended period of time.

*"I used to eat fish frequently."*  
*"Yo **comía** pescado. frecuentemente"*

The imperfect tense is also used to "set the stage" for an event that occurred in the past

*"**Veníamos** para casa cuando vimos a Juan."*  
*"**We were** coming home when we saw John."*

When something was happening in the past, in some ongoing way

*"**Estaba** lloviendo."*  
*"**It was** raining."*

A certain condition for an ongoing time

*"**Estaba** embarazada cuando nos casamos."*  
*"**She was** pregnant when we got married."*

Actions which are not physical, that is feelings and mental actions, usually use the imperfect tense.

*"We went to the supermarket."*

*"Juan **estaba** enfermo."*  
*"John **was** sick."*

In the conversation, **Era** was used, but in this case, "**fue**" and "**era**" are interchangeable, but in general, there are some differences.

Imperfect for ser, "**era**" is like "used to be":

**Example:**

*"Él era doctor, ahora es veterinario."*

*"He "was" a doctor (for some time), but now he is a vet."*

Preterite for ser, "**fue**" is like "was".

**Example:**

*"Fue un buen espectáculo."*

*"It was a good show."*

(the show is over and done with).

*"Él era un buen hombre."*

*"He used to be a good man."*

But now he is dead. It does not mean he became evil, he just died.

*"Él fue un buen hombre."*

*"He was a good man."*

When he was alive, he was a good man. His life came to an end.

Let's say I used to be a Mechanic in the past, and someone asks me, "*What kind of job you did in the past*", I would answer, "*Era mecánico*", if I am talking about

someone else, it's still, "*Era mecánico*", this is why I said it's also the third person.

**Yo era** mecánico = I was a mechanic

**Tú eras** mecánico = You were a mechanic

**Él era** mecánico/ella era mecánica = He/she was a mechanic

**Usted era** mecánico = You (formal) were a mechanic

**Nosotros éramos** mecánicos/Nosotras éramos mecánicas  
= We were mechanics

**Ustedes eran** mecánicos = You all were mechanics

**Ellos eran** mecánicos/Ellas son mecánicas = They were mechanics

*Fue* is also third-person singular (él, ella) and formal second-person singular (usted) preterite indicative form of "*ir*" (to go).

### Example:

*"Él fue al supermercado."*

*"He went to the supermarket."*

You may read more about the Spanish preterite and imperfect tenses in [this blog post](#) on the Gritty Spanish blog.

**Él vivió:** The word, *vivió* comes from the verb, "*vivir*" (to live). *Vivió* is the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

He is talking about the man who died and him living a full life, but his life had a definite end to it, so this is why it's not the imperfect tense version of the verb, "Vivía".

Now if we are saying, "He **used to live** good", THEN it would be, "Él **vivía** bien".

Example using **the imperfect tense** using the verb, "Vivir" (to live).

"Él **vivía** con su madre."

"He **used** to live with his mother."

"**Vivió** con su madre hasta 1970."

"He **lived** with his mother until 1978."

**Murió:** This word comes from the verb, "morir" (to die). *Murió* is the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

### Example:

"Mi abuelo **murió** hace seis años."

"My Grandpa **died** 6 yrs ago."

**Dar el pésame:** So, "pésame" means "condolences".

So "Dar el pésame" is to "express/give condolences"

You might be tempted to say "dar las condolencias" just because the words are similar.

Just remember that "pésame" is a lot more common in Spanish.

But if you want to use the word “condolencias”, you can say “*dar mis/tus/nuestras condolencias*” (to give my/your/our condolences).

The verb, “Dar” means, “To give”.

**Me da gusto saber que:** When you want to say, “I am happy to....”, there are different translation options...

Let's break it down, “*me da gusta saber que*”.

“Me da” alone means, “It gives me”.

Da comes from the verb, “Dar” (to give). Da is the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. “Me da” can also be, “He/she gives me”, it can also be “It gives me”.

**Gusto** here means, “Taste/pleasure”.

So, “Me da gusto” means, “it gives me pleasure”.

The verb **Saber** means, “to know”.

Que = That

Another option could be “Me alegra saber que”.

**Lo van a enterrar:** They are still talking about the dead man.

Lo is presenting, “him”.

Van (They are going to) comes from the verb, “ir” (to go) and it's the *Ellos/Ellas* form of the verb used in the present

indicative tense. They are using this verb to talk about what's **GOING to happen**.

We can also move the “**Lo**”(him) and put it at the end of the infinitive verb, “*Enterrar*”(to bury) like so, “*Van a enterrar**lo***”.

**Los demás**: “*Demás*” means “*rest/others*”.

But you can't say just “*voy a hablar con demás*”; you need to add an article. In this case, the proper article is “**los**”.

“*Los demás*”= (the others/all the other people/everyone else). If the room was full of women, you should say “*voy a hablar con **las** demás*”(I am going to talk with the others).

### **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [33 different ways to express condolences in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [30 Encouraging Spanish Phrases to Cheer up Someone](#)
- ✓ [Orar and Rezar: Understanding Prayer in Spanish Culture](#)
- ✓ [The Spanish present perfect tense explained](#)
- ✓ [Spanish expressions for concern](#)
- ✓ [Different ways to say “sorry in Spanish”](#)

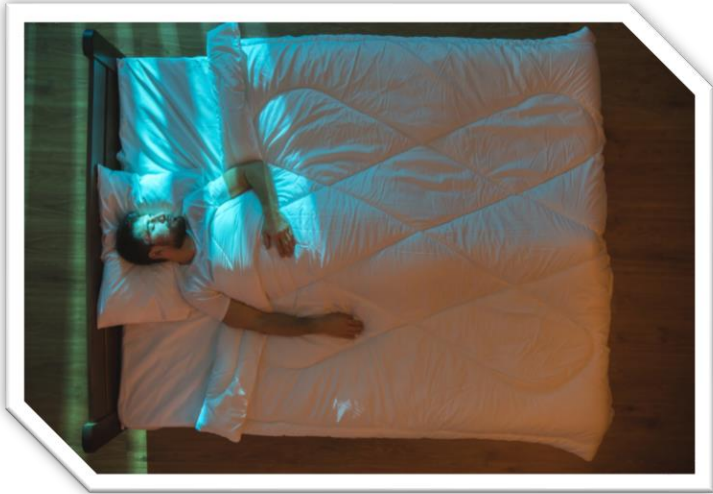
([Back to episode list](#))

### **Quizzes for Episode 18**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 19: The Dream



## Synopsis:

Hector and Verenice had been friends since high school. Last night, Héctor had a dream about Verenice and gives her some details about what he dreamt about. She listens, pushes for more, but also feels that he is not revealing the full version of the dream and is leaving out important details. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Héctor:** [Tengo algo que decirte](#) Verenice.

**Héctor:** I have something to tell you Verenice.

**Verenice:** ¿Qué es, Héctor? Hmmm, ¿por qué estás sonriendo?

**Verenice:** What is it Héctor? Hmmm, why are you smiling?

**Héctor:** Nada, soñé contigo anoche.

**Héctor:** Nothing, I dreamt about you last night.

**Verenice:** ¿En serio? ¿De qué se trató?

**Verenice:** Really? What was it about?

**Héctor:** Bueno, fue un sueño muy raro, pero interesante. Estaba caminando en un parque, y de repente, terminé en un bar.

**Héctor:** Well, it was a very weird dream, but interesting. I was walking in a park, and all of sudden, I ended up in a bar.

**Verenice:** ¿Ah sí? ¿Cuál bar? Interesante...

**Verenice:** Oh yeah? Which bar? Interesting...

**Héctor:** ¿Conoces el que está en la calle Louis? Ese... No sé por qué; nunca fui a ese bar. De todas maneras, cuando entré en el bar, te vi allí.

**Héctor:** You know the one on Louis street? That one...I don't know why; I never went to that bar. Anyway, when I walked into the bar, I saw you there.

**Verenice:** Fascinante, ¿qué estaba haciendo?

**Verenice:** Fascinating, what was I doing?

**Héctor:** Estabas hablando con el camarero, y pidiendo tragos.

**Héctor:** You were talking to the bartender, and ordering drinks.

**Verenice:** ¿Te acuerdas de más detalles? Necesito detalles Héctor.

**Verenice:** Do you remember more details? I need details Héctor.

**Héctor:** ¿Qué tipo de detalles?

**Héctor:** What kind of details?

**Verenice:** ¿Qué llevaba puesto? Mi ropa. ¿Qué me estaba diciendo el camarero a mí?

**Verenice:** What was I wearing? My clothes. What was the bartender saying to me?

**Héctor:** Pues, no me acuerdo bien de la conversación. Había mucho ruido en el bar. Se escuchaba música salsa. Esto es todo lo que puedo recordar. Ah, casi lo olvido, estabas usando una falda blanca.

**Héctor:** Well, I don't remember the conversation well. It was very loud in the bar. Salsa music was playing. That's all I can remember. Oh, I almost forgot, you were wearing a white skirt.

**Verenice:** Está bien, hmmm, entonces, ¿qué pasó después?

**Verenice:** Okay, hmmm, so, what happened next?

**Héctor:** Fui a hablar contigo y desapareciste, puf, como por arte de magia. Después; me desperté.

**Héctor:** I went to talk to you and you disappeared, poof, like magic; then, I woke up.

**Verenice:** Hmmmm, sé que hay algo más acerca de este sueño, solamente que no quieres decirme, pero está bien.

**Verenice:** Hmmmm, I know there's more to this dream, you just don't want to tell me, but it's okay.

**--Fin de la Historia--**

--End of Story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Tengo algo que decirte:** When you or someone else have to do something, you use the verb, “Tener” (to have). So here, the word, “Tengo” (I have) was used. *Tengo* is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The un-conjugated verb, “Decir”, means, “to tell/to say”. The “Te” at the end, means, “You”. “Decirte” together is, “To tell **you**”.

“Algo” means, “something”.

Remember, the formula you can use when you or have someone else have to do something is first conjugate the verb,

**Tener + Que + an unconjugated verb**

After *tener*, the character used the word, “algo”, but

followed up with “que”, which is fine. Omitting the “algo” would have a slightly different meaning:

*“Tengo que decirte.”*

*“I have to tell you.”*

*“Tengo **algo** que decirte.”*

*“I have **something** to tell you.”*

The “algo” does not have to be placed at the beginning of the sentence. He could have also said, “Tengo que decirte algo”.

Here are a few **examples** that follow the formula...

*“Tengo que dormir.”*

*“I have to sleep.”*

*“Tengo que caminar todos los días.”*

*“I have to walk every day.”*

*“Tengo que conocer más gente.”*

*“I have to meet more people.”*

**Estás sonriendo**: The word, “estás” means, “are you” or “you are”.

“Estás” comes from the verb, “Estar”, which means, “To be”.

And estás is the “TÚ” form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Here is how the verb “Estar” is conjugated in the present/indicative tense...

**Yo** Estoy – I am

**Tú** Estás – You are

**Él/Ella** Está – He/she is

**Usted** Es - You (formal) are

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Estamos – We are

**Ustedes** Están - You all are

**Ellos/Ellas** Estan – They are

“Sonriendo” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending - **ing**. Sonriendo comes from the verb, “sonreír”.

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### Examples:

jugar (to play) — jugando (playing)

ver (to see) — viendo (seeing)

cantar (to sing) — cantando (living)

llamar (to call) — llamando (living)

**Soñé contigo**: When you want to say, “*I had a dream about you/I dreamt about you*”, you use, the verb, “sonar” (to dream). Here the word, “soñé” is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

We know that the word, “contigo” means “with you”, so it’s kind of strange saying that, since its *soñé contigo*, which literally means, “*I dreamt with you*”.

Here is the verb, “Sonar”(to dream) conjugated in the preterite indicative tense.

**Yo** Soñé – I dreamt

**Tú** Soñaste – You dreamt

**Él/Ella** Soñó – He/she dreamt

**Usted** Soñó- You (formal) dreamt

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Soñamos – We dreamt

**Ustedes** Soñaron- You all dreamt

**Ellos/Ellas** Soñaron – They dreamt

### Examples:

*"Entonces, ¿soñaste con tu novia anoche?"*

*"So, **you dreamt** about your girlfriend last night?"*

*"**Soñó** contigo el otro día."*

*"**She/he had a dream** about you the other day."*

*"¿**Soñaste** conmigo?"*

*"Did you dream about me?"*

**Fue:** The word in here, "**Fue**" comes from the verb, "**ir**" (to go). **Fue** is the preterite indicative tense **Él/Ella/Usted** version of the verb. When you want to say, "**it was**", you can use "**Fue**", since "**it**" is the "**third person**".

### Examples:

*"**It was** a good time."*

*"**Fue** una buena época."*

*"**Fue** un placer conocerte."*

*"**It was** a pleasure meeting you."*

**Estaba caminando**: *Estaba* comes from the verb, “*estar*” (to be). *Estaba* is the Imperfect indicative tense of the verb, “*estar*”. In this tense, *Estaba* is the Yo form of the verb, but it is also the *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb. When you want to talk about you or someone doing something over and over in the past, you use the Imperfect tense.

Some linguists and grammarians call the imperfect the “present” of the past because it has the same functions that the present tense has (ongoing states, customary actions, description, etc.), just that the time is past, not present.

When we use the present, we’re in contact with what’s going on (**I study, I work, there’s snow in the street**, etc.); the same is true for when we use the imperfect. We “transport” ourselves to that time and tell what the situation was around us, what was happening, what happened habitually, etc.

When we use the preterit tense, we compartmentalize a period or isolate an event and separate ourselves from it (it is no longer happening in the “*present of the past*”, it is just past).

“*Caminado*” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**. *Caminando* comes from the verb, “*Caminar*” (to walk).

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

**Examples:**

jugar (to play) — jugando (playing)  
ver (to see) — viendo (seeing)  
cantar (to sing) — cantando (singing)  
llamar (to call) — llamando (calling)

**De repente:** “De repente” is an independent term. It means “suddenly”, “all of the sudden”.

**Examples:**

“**De repente**, no pude recordar nada.”

“**All of a sudden**, I couldn't remember anything.”

“**De repente**, la maestra entró al salón de clases.”

“**All of a sudden**, the teacher entered the classroom.”

“**De repente**, la moto se subió a la acera.”

“**Suddenly**, the motorcycle went up on the sidewalk.”

“Su tío murió **de repente**.”

“His uncle **suddenly** died. “

You can also say, “de pronto” instead of “De repente”, it means the same thing.

**Terminé:** This word comes from the verb, “Terminar” (to end/To finish). Every time I see/hear this word, I think of the movie, “The Terminator”. *Terminé* is the Yo form of the verb, used in the preterite indicative tense. Great when you want to talk about where you or someone else ended up or finished.

This is how the verb, “Terminar”(to end /to finish) is conjugated in the preterite indicative tense:

**Yo** Terminé – I finished or ended up

**Tú** Terminaste - You finished or ended up

**Él/Ella** Terminó – She/he finished or ended up

**Usted** Terminó - You (formal) finished or ended up

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Terminamos - They finished or ended up

**Ustedes** Terminaron - You all finished or ended up

**Ellos/Ellas** Terminaron – They finished or ended up

### Examples:

*"**Terminó** en un accidente de carro."*

*"**She/he** ended up in a car accident."*

*"De repente, **terminé** en un río."*

*"All of a sudden, **I ended** up in a river."*

**Te vi allí:** Let's first talk about the word, "vi" (I saw). "Vi" is Yo form of the verb, "Ver" (to see) used in the preterite indicative past tense.

The "**Te**" represents, the word, "**You**".

So, "**te vi**" alone, means, "**I saw you**".

allí = There/over there.

### Example:

*"¿**Viste** una persona allí?"*

*"**You saw** a person there?"*

Noticed the "**Tú**" form of the verb, "ver" (to see) was used in that example?

**Qué estaba haciendo:** *Estaba* is the Imperfect indicative tense of the verb, "estar". When you want to

talk about you or someone doing something over and over in the past, you use the Imperfect tense. It comes from the verb, “Estar”(to be).

“Haciendo” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending - **ing**. *Haciendo* comes from the verb, “Hacer”(to do/to make).

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### Examples:

jugar (to play) — jugando (playing)  
ver (to see) — viendo (seeing)  
cantar (to sing) — cantando (singing)  
llamar (to call) — llamando (calling)

“*qué estaba haciendo*” means, “*what was I doing*”.

**Estabas hablando**: This comes from the verb, “estar”(to be). *Estabas* is the second-person singular (*tú*) Imperfect indicative tense of the verb, “estar”. When you want to talk about you or someone doing something over and over in the past, you use the Imperfect tense.

“*Hablando*” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending - **ing**. *Hablando* comes from the verb, “Hablar”(to talk/to speak).

**Te acuerdas de:** The word “remember” can be translated to “acordarse de” or “recordar”, so the character could have said:

¿Te acuerdas de?, where “acuerdas” is the Informal second-person singular (tú) present indicative form of acordar (which means “agree to” “agree on”, “agree with”. However, in this case, when you add a reflexive pronoun **me** (acordarme), **te** (acordarte), **se** (acordarse), **nos** (acordarnos), it becomes “to remember/recall”.

“Acordarse” is a **pronominal verb** (verbs that are used with a reflexive pronoun such as **me, te, se, nos**).

Other examples of pronominal verbs are “vestirse” (to get dress), *perderse* (to get lost).

To conjugate a pronominal verb, you always need to include a **reflexive pronoun**. So, let’s conjugate the verb “acordarse”.

Yo **me** acuerdo - I remember  
Tú **te** acuerdas - you remember  
Él/ella **se** acuerda - He/she remembers  
Usted **se** acuerda - You (formal) remember  
Nosotros **nos** acordamos - We remember  
Ustedes **se** acuerdan - You (all) remember  
Ellos **se** acuerdan - They remember

\*If you don't include the reflexive pronoun, the meaning changes...

Yo acuerdo - *I agree on*; Tú acuerdas (you agree on) etc.

Acordarse is also an **intransitive verb**, meaning that it doesn't admit a direct complement and **always** need a prepositional complement introduced by the word “**de**”:

For, “I remember you.”

- Me acuerdo ti – **wrong**
- Me acuerdo **de** ti – **correct**

For, “She never remembers my name.”

- Ella nunca se acuerda mi nombre - **wrong**
- Ella nunca se acuerda **de** mi nombre – **correct**

So, remember, If you use the verb “**acordar**” without a reflexive pronoun, it expresses an agreement with someone. If you add a *reflexive pronoun*, the meaning changes to “remember”

Another option would be to use the word “recordar”.

“Do you remember more details?”

“¿Te acuerdas de más detalles?”

“¿**Recuerdas** más detalles?”

Where “recuerdas” is the informal second-person singular (tú) present indicative form of “recordar” (to remember) Unlike “acordarse”, “recordar” is a transitive verb, so it appears accompanied by a direct complement, replaceable by the pronouns **lo/la**.

### Examples:

- Recuerdo que me dejaste solo (**Lo** recuerdo)
- I remember you left me alone (I remember **it**)

- Recuerdo su hermosa cara (**la** recuerdo)
- I remember her beautiful face (I remember **it**)

**llevaba puesto**: This wouldn't be considered, “Basic” Spanish, but as you know, some advanced stuff snuck into this version of Gritty Spanish, which is healthy.

Let's explain it a bit...

The word "puesto" alone can mean.

1) **Job position**

*"Tiene muy buen **puesto** en la empresa."*

*"He has a good **job** in the company."*

2) **Stand/stall**

*"Mi papá tiene un **puesto de comida** en el mercado."*

*"My father owns a **food stand** at the market."*

3) **Post (military)/spot/place**

*"El guardia de seguridad no estaba en su **puesto**."*

*"The security guard was not in his **spot**."*

Now, when you add the word "llevar" before "puesto", "**llevar puesto**" becomes a new term on its own, it means "to wear".

"llevar puesto" is exclusively used for clothing/accessories, it does not share any other of the meanings of "wear". When used like this, you always have to use "puesto" in **past participle**.

It is wrong to say "llevar poner"/ "llevar pongo", etc. Why it's not, que estaba poniendo?

"Estaba poniendo" would be wrong (in this context). Remember we are not using the verb "poner" (top ut) alone, we have "llevar puesto".

"Estar poniendo" is a whole different term, it could mean...

a) **Is getting**

*"Ella se está poniendo paranoica."*

*"She is getting paranoid."*

b) **putting on**

*"Él se estaba poniendo un suéter."*

*"He was putting on a sweater."*

Is Puesto feminine/masculine?

It does not matter the gender of the person in "*llevar puesto*", but it does matter the gender of the noun (whatever the person is wearing).

It also matters if the noun is singular or plural.

**Examples:**

*"Ella llevaba puesto un suéter."*

*"She was wearing a sweater."*

**\*\***"suéter" is masculine and singular.

*"Él llevaba puesta una camisa azul."*

*"He was wearing a blue shirt."*

**\*\***"Camisa" is feminine and singular.

*"Él llevaba puestas unas botas de vaquero."*

*"He was wearing cowboy boots."*

**\*\***"Botas" is feminine and plural)

*"Ella llevaba puestos unos zapatos de diseñador."*

*"She was wearing designer shoes."*

**\*\***"Zapatos" is masculine and plural.

Again, the word, *Puesto* is the Past Participle of *poner* (to put).

Now if she asks a person in the present tense, “*What am I wearing?*” it would be, “¿*Qué llevo puesto?*”, but she is speaking using the **The imperfect tense** in the story.

Remember, the imperfect tense is a verb form which combines past tense (reference to a past time) and imperfective aspect (reference to a continuing or repeated event or state). It can have meanings similar to the English “was talking” or “used to talk” as examples.

**Casi lo olvido**: The word “*Casi*” means, “*almost*”. The conjugated verb, “*olvido*”, is the first-person singular (yo) present indicative form of, “*Olvidar*” (to forget).

The “*lo*” represents that thing he almost forgot.

“*Casi lo olvido.*”

“*I almost forgot it/that.*”

In Spanish, in this scenario, you can say either “*casi lo olvidé*” or “*casi lo olvido*”, and both would mean “*I almost forgot*”. It depends on whether you want to talk about a particular event in the past or in the present.

*Casi lo olvido.*

(I almost forgot something **right now**, while we are speaking)

*Casi lo olvidé.*

(I almost forgot something at **a specific time in the past** - yesterday, last week, etc.)

**Qué pasó:** I am sure you've heard this before, even when you don't know much Spanish. I know I've heard it many times, even before I was interested in the Spanish language.

The word, "qué" means, "what" of course.

The word, "pasó" comes from the verb, "Pasar" (to happen /to pass).

Pasó is the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

**Me desperté:** Desperté comes from the verb, "Despertar" (to wake up), it's used in the preterite indicative tense here; it the Yo form. When it's used reflexively, it becomes, "Levantar(**se**)" (to wake up).

A reflexive pronoun is used as part of a reflexive verb to indicate that someone or something is performing an action on or for itself. "**Me**" was used as the reflexive pronoun, it's literally saying, "I woke myself up".

### Examples:

"¿A qué hora **te despertaste** hoy?"

"What time **did you wake up** today?"

"**Me desperté** a las cinco en la mañana."

"**I woke up** at 5 in the morning."

"Ella **se despertó** muy temprano hoy."

"**She woke up** very early today."

**Desapareciste:** This is the informal second-person singular (tú) preterite indicative form of *desaparecer* (to disappear). When we conjugate the verb in this tense, we have the following

**Yo** desaparecí - I disappeared

**Tú** desapareciste - You disappeared

**Él/ella desapareció** - He/she disappeared

**Usted** desapareció - You (formal) disappeared

**Nosotros/Nosotras** desaparecimos - We disappeared

**Ustedes** desaparecieron - You all disappeared

**Ellos/Ellas** desaparecieron - They disappeared

**Había mucho ruido:** "*Había*" is the imperfect indicative form of "*haber*", which means "there was", "there were".

Mucho= a lot

Ruido= noise

"**Había** mucho ruido en el bar."

"**There was** a lot of noise in the bar."

The English side says "*It was very loud in the bar*", but if you translate that literally, you would have: "*estaba muy fuerte en el bar*".

But *what was loud*?

If you want to use this structure, you could say something like:

*"La música estaba muy fuerte en el bar."*

*"The music was very loud in the bar."*

**Se escuchaba**: You've seen the "passive voice" used a couple of times in this version of Gritty Spanish. Like at the start of one episode, where we wrote, "Music is heard" or "Music is played", etc., it was translated to, "Se escucha música".

The "passive voice" is considered advanced Spanish, but you'll see it everywhere, so it's great to get a basic understanding of how it works.

**The passive voice** is generally used to talk about a person or object without making mention of whoever or whatever is performing the action on that person or object.

### **Examples:**

**"Se habla** español aquí."

*"Spanish is spoken here."*

**"Se pagan** las cuentas cada lunes."

*"The bills are paid every Monday."*

**"Se vende** queso."

*"Cheese is sold here."*

**"Se vende** ropa."

*"Clothes is sold here."*

**"Se enseña** español."

*"Spanish is taught here."*

In this episode, the male character said, "**Se escuchaba** música salsa". The word **escuchaba** is the imperfect form

of the verb **escuchar**(to listen/to hear) in the first person singular.

**The imperfect tense** is a verb form that combines past tense (reference to a past time) and imperfective aspect (reference to a continuing or repeated event or state). It can have meanings similar to the English "was talking" or "used to talk" as examples.

If he was talking in the present tense, he would have said, "Se escucha música salsa."

If you're curious about learning more about the mysterious **se**, be sure [to check out his blog post](#) on the Gritty Spanish blog!

**¿De qué se trató?**: This is the interrogative of "Se trató de".

Let's break down first the affirmative sentence.

"tratar" can have different meanings, such as "deal with", "treat", "negotiate", etc. When you add the prepositions "de" or "sobre", you get "tratar de/ tratar sobre".

Both of these terms mean "to be about".

### **Example:**

"El libro se trata de la Segunda Guerra Mundial."

"The book is about World War II."

In the story, they were talking about the dream, and they are using the past tense, which is why we have "se trató" and not "se trata" since "trató" is the third-person singular preterite indicative form of the verb, "tratar".

We already have “se *trató de*”; and we are talking about “el *sueño*”(the dream).

“**El sueño se** *trató de*...”

“**The dream** *was about*...”

“*Se trató de.*”

“*It was about.*”

To make it a question, we add “¿*de qué?*”, which means “what?” (can also mean “which” or “from which”, depending on the context.)

### Example:

“¿*De qué se trató el sueño?*”

“*What was the dream about?*”

### HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Understanding “se” in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Spanish past tenses explained](#)
- ✓ [Understanding the imperfect tense in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Different ways to use the verb “Haber”](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### Quizzes for Episode 19

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 20: Going to a Party



## Synopsis:

On a rainy New Year's Eve night, Lorenzo and his younger brother are heading to a New Year's Eve party. This episode will help you talk about and understand time as Lorenzo's younger sibling tries to convince him to stay past 1 a.m. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**José:** Lorenzo, [vamos con retraso](#) para la fiesta de Nochevieja. ¿A qué hora vamos a estar allí?

**José:** Lorenzo, we are late to the New Year's Eve party. What time are we going to be there?

**Lorenzo:** No, no vamos con retraso, José. La fiesta empieza a las nueve y media, así que, vamos temprano.

**Lorenzo:** No, we are not late, José. The party starts at 9:30, so, we are early.

**José:** ¿En serio? Julia me dijo que empieza a las ocho p.m.

**José:** Really? Julia told me that it starts at 8 p.m.

**Lorenzo:** No, cambiaron la hora. Antes era a las siete y media p.m. y la cambiaron a las ocho p.m. Ahora va a ser a las nueve y media p.m.

**Lorenzo:** No, they changed the time. Before it was 7:30 p.m. and they changed it to 8 p.m. Now it's going to be at 9:30 p.m.

**José:** Eso es una locura. ¿Qué hora es ahora?

**José:** That's crazy. What time is it now?

**Lorenzo:** Solo son las ocho menos cuarto y casi estamos allí.

**Lorenzo:** It's only a quarter to 8 and we are almost there.

**José:** Ok, vamos a estar allí muy temprano. ¿Crees que Raúl y su esposa van a estar allí?

**José:** Okay, we are going to be there really early. Do you think Raúl and his wife are going to be there?

**Lorenzo:** Bueno, Raúl dijo que iba a estar allá. No estoy seguro sobre su esposa. Él me dijo que iba a llegar a las diez p.m.

**Lorenzo:** Well, Raúl said he was going to be there. I am not sure about his wife. He told me that he was going to arrive at 10 p.m.

**José:** Él va a llegar tarde entonces.

**José:** He is going to be late then.

**Lorenzo:** Sí, él siempre llega tarde. Él y su esposa siempre se aparecen dos horas tarde o más.

**Lorenzo:** Yes, he is always late. He and his wife always show up two hours late or more.

**José:** Sí, esto es verdad. ¿A qué hora quieres irte?

**José:** Yes, that is true. What time do you want to leave?

**Lorenzo:** Quiero irme como a la una de la mañana, no quiero quedarme tan tarde.

**Lorenzo:** I want to leave around 1a.m, I don't want to stay too late.

**José:** ¿Por qué tan temprano? Estás envejeciendo Lorenzo.

**José:** Why so early? You're getting old Lorenzo.

**Lorenzo:** Jajajaja, no quiero pasar mucho tiempo allí; tengo que trabajar en la mañana. ¿Quieres irte más tarde?

**Lorenzo:** Hahaha, I don't want to spend too much time there; I have to work in the morning. Do you want to leave later?

**José:** Sí, creo que a las tres de la mañana está bien, pero a las cuatro es mejor. ¿Qué opinas?

**José:** Yes, I think 3 a.m. is good, but 4 a.m. is better. What do you think?

**Lorenzo:** No, no puedo. Tengo que levantarme a las cinco de la mañana para trabajar. Necesito dormir un poco.

**Lorenzo:** No, I can't. I have to get up 5 a.m. in the morning for work. I need to sleep a little.

**José:** Guau, no puedo creerlo, mañana es Año Nuevo y ¿tú vas a trabajar? ¿A qué hora vas a salir del trabajo mañana?

**José:** Wow, I can't believe it, tomorrow is New Year's Day and you are going to work? What time you're going to leave work tomorrow?

**Lorenzo:** Yo tengo que trabajar hasta las tres de la tarde. Va a ser un día corto. No puedo creer que tengo que trabajar en el día de Año Nuevo amigo.

**Lorenzo:** I have to work until 3 in the afternoon. It's going to be a short day. I can't believe I have to work on New Year's Day man.

**José:** Sí, es terrible. ¿Cuál es el problema? Podemos irnos a las cuatro en la mañana ya que vas a salir del trabajo tan temprano.

**José:** Yeah, it's terrible. What's the problem? We can leave at 4 a.m. since you're going to get off work so early.

**Lorenzo:** Te dije que a la una en la mañana José...

**Lorenzo:** I told you one in the morning. José...

**--Fin de la Historia--**

--End of Story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Vamos con retraso:** *Vamos* (we go) comes from the verb, “*ir*” (to go). *Vamos* is the *Nosotros/Nosotras* form of the verb conjugated in the present indicative tense.

The word, “*Con*” means, “*With*”.

When you want to say, “*run late*”, you use:  
***ir***(to go) ***con*** (with) ***retraso***(delay)

So “*Vamos con retraso*” literally means, “*We go with delay*”.

They could have also said, “*Vamos a llegar tarde*”. *Llegar* is a verb that means, “*to arrive*”, and “*tarde*” means “*late*”.

**Vamos temprano:** *Vamos* is used here again and it means, “*we are going*” comes from the verb, “*ir*” (to go). *Vamos* is the *Nosotros/Nosotras* form of the verb conjugated in the present indicative tense.

The word, “*temprano*” means, “*early*”.

*Vamos temprano*, means, “*We are early*”.

**Julia me dijo:** The last word, “Dijo” comes from the verb, “Decir” (to say/to tell). *Dijo* is the *É/Ella/Usted* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense. They are talking about Julia, she is the 3<sup>rd</sup> person, so that's why the *É/Ella/Usted* form of the verb was used.

This is how the verb *Decir* (to say/to tell) is conjugated in the preterite indicative past tense:

**Yo** Dije – I said

**Tú** Dijiste – You said

**Él/Ella** Dijo – He/She said

**Usted** Dijo- You (formal) said

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Dijimos– We said

**Ustedes** Dijeron- You all said

**Ellos/Ellas** Dijeron – They Said

### **Example:**

“**Te dije** la verdad.”

“**I told** you the truth.”.

“Rosa me **dijo** una mentira.”

“Rosa **told** me a lie.”

“Ayer, me **dijeron** que no.”

“Yesterday, **they** told me no.”

**Cambiaron la hora:** The word, “Cambiaron” comes from the verb, “Cambiar” (to change). *Cambiaron* is the *Ellos/Ellas* form of the verb when conjugated in the preterite indicative past tense. It was mentioned that “**They**” changed the time, so this is why it's *ellos/ellas*. The present indicative tense of “*Cambiaron*” is, “*Cambian*”.

Here is how the verb, “Cambiar”(to change) is conjugated in the preterite indicative past tense:

**Yo** Cambié – I changed

**Tú** Cambiaste – You changed

**Él/Ella/Usted** Cambio – He/She/it changed

**Ellos/Ellas** Cambiaron – They changed

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Cambiamos – We changed.

### la hora/tiempo:

Time (concept of time) = *Tiempo*

Time (specific hour) = *Hora*

### Example:

“¿Qué **hora** es?”

“What **time** is it?”

**ocho menos cuarto**: When you want to say, it's a quarter to a specific hour, first you start with the *hour*. In this case, it's, “**Ocho**”(eight). Then you use the word, “**menos**”(less) and the word, “**Cuarto**”(forth/quarter).

When you are expressing time in Spanish, be sure to use the verb, “Ser”(to be). So, this is why the character said, “Son” which is the verb conjugated in the present indicative tense. *Son* is the *Ellos/Ellas* form of the verb. It's **Son** because **8** is *plural*... If it's 1 O'clock, then it's “Es”. Thanks to how we say it in English, even myself used to fall victim and say “Es” no matter the hour, 1 p.m. or 12 p.m., but it's incorrect...

### Examples:

**“Son las cinco menos cuarto.”**

**“It's a quarter 'til five.”**

**“Son las diez menos cuarto.”**

**“It's a quarter to 10.”**

**“Es la una menos cuarto.”**

**“It's a quarter to 1.”**

When you want to say, it's **after** a certain hour, you may say **hora y cuarto**; or even the hour and then “cuarenta y cinco” (45)

In Latin America, you can also use the phrases **cuarto**

**Para** or **un cuarto para** or just “**cuarto para**” to say a quarter 'til. The preference depends on the region.

### **Examples:**

**“Es un cuarto para las seis.”**

Or

**“Es cuarto para las seis”.**

To say:

**“It's a quarter 'til six.”**

**“Son un cuarto para las once.”**

Or

**“Es cuarto para las once.”**

To say:

"It's a quarter to eleven."

### Other Useful Expressions/phrases when talking about time:

- de la madrugada - in the (early) morning or the wee hours
- de la mañana - in the morning
- de la tarde - in the afternoon
- de la noche - in the evening or at night
- a.m. - a.m.
- p. m. - p.m.
- en punto - on the dot
- más o menos - around
- medianoche - midnight
- mediodía – noon

**Iba a estar allá:** I know we've mentioned the verb, "ir" (to go) numerous times to talk about what you or someone else is **going to do** in the present tense.

But how about using the verb to talk about what you or someone else **WAS going to do**?

This is where that word, "**iba**" (was going to) comes from and it is the *Él/Ella/usted* and also the "Yo" form of the verb. The word *iba* is the imperfect form of *ir* (to go).

### What is the Spanish imperfect tense?

**The imperfect tense in Spanish** is the tense that expresses actions in the past that has not been completed, that occurred habitually or frequently, or that took place over an indefinite period of time. The preterite and imperfect tenses are often referred to as the two simple past tenses of Spanish.

You won't see it much in this version of Gritty Spanish, but it's good to at least be aware of it.

### Examples:

*"Iba a llamarte."*

*"I was going to call you."*

*"¿Ibas a ir a la fiesta?"*

*"You were going to go to the party?"*

*"Juan iba a almorzar conmigo, pero no tuvo tiempo."*

*"Juan was going to have lunch with me, but he didn't have time."*

Here he was talking about Raúl saying he was going to be there. So, this is why the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb was used in that tense, "iba". Remember that, "iba" is also the *Yo* form of the verb used in that tense.

*Estar* = To be

*Allá* = There

**Va a llegar**: They switch back into the present tense of the verb, "ir" (to go) to talk about the third person, "Raúl" being late, so "Va" (he/she is going).

The infinitive verb, "llegar" means, "to arrive".

### Examples:

*"Voy a llegar tarde al trabajo."*

*"I am going to be late for work."*

“¿Vas a llegar temprano mañana?”

“You going to be early tomorrow?”

**Se aparecen:** The word, “Aparecen”(they appear) comes from the verb, “aparecer”(To appear/to show up). They were talking about Raúl and his wife, so this is why the Ellos/Ellas form of the verb was used. When the verb, “Aparecer” is conjugated in the present indicative tense, it's “Aparecen”.

Now the reflexive pronoun **se** was used before the word, making it, “**Se** aparecen”. Literally, this is, “they show themselves up.”

Remember when we spoke about the verb, “**Llamar**”(to call) when talking about asking someone their name? Well, when she says, “his/her name is...”, we use the reflexive pronoun, “Se”, and say, “Se llama Edwin”(his name is Edwin) for example. This is literally, “He calls himself Edwin”.

“Their names are” is the same reflexive pronoun, “se”.

### **Example:**

“**Se llaman** Rosa y Renaldo.”

“**Their names** are Rose & Renaldo.”

Again, this literally means, “They call themselves Rosa & Renaldo.”

So now, you have a pretty good idea why “Se” was used before the word, “Aparecen”, same concept.

As Spanish-language learners, **I know from my own experience** that we tend to speak and not use the

reflexive pronouns. I've asked myself this in the beginning and I know you will too:

*"How does one sound to a native speaker when they DON'T use the reflexive pronoun here?"*

I reached out to a native speaker and this is what she had to say:

"In the **"se aparecen"** example, if someone left out the reflexive pronoun and they just say **"Ellos siempre aparecen dos horas más tarde"**, It wouldn't be a big deal here, in fact, some Spanish native speakers might neglect the pronoun in regular speech.

However, in some cases, it would just sound like something is slightly off with their statement, but they would be understood.

On the other hand, with **"se llama"**, if you want to say **"Ella se llama Rosa"** (here name is Rose), and you just say **"ella llama Rosa"**, it would surely sound weird and incomplete. Maybe something similar to what Tarzan would say, hahaha".

There you have it.

**Quieres irte:** The word, **"Quieres"** (You want) is from the verb, **"Querer"** (to want). **Quieres** is the **Tú** form of the verb used in the indicative present tense.

He said the infinitive verb, **"ir"** (to go). **Quieres ir** together means, **"You want to go"**. He then attached the pronoun **"te"** to the end of the verb. **"Te"** here means, **"you"**.

As English speakers, I know we may be tempted to use the verb, “Salir”(to leave) in this situation.

When referring to leaving a place (in this case, the party,) we have to use it reflexively and turn the verb “ir” (to go) into **irse** and the meaning changes from “to go” to “to leave/to go away/to depart”.

### **Check out the conjugation below:**

**Irse** = to leave, to go away, to depart

*Yo quiero irme* - I want to leave

*Tú quieres irte* - You want to leave

*Él/ella quiere irse* - He/she wants to leave

*Usted quiere irse* - You (formal) want to leave

*Nosotros queremos irnos* - We want to leave

*Ustedes quieren irse* - You all want to leave

*Ellos quieren irse* - They want to leave

**Ir** = to go

*Yo quiero ir* - I want to go

*Tú quieres ir* - You want to go

*Él/ella quiere ir* - He/she wants to go

*Usted quiere ir* - You (formal) want to go

*Nosotros queremos ir* - We want to go

*Ustedes quieren ir - You all want to go*

*Ellos quieren ir - They want to go*

*Irse* is a pronominal verb that uses reflexive pronouns and tends to focus on the act of leaving a starting point or origin. The origin is presumed to be here (or wherever the subject is at the time).

I know this is a bit confusing, but I wholeheartedly believe you'll get it.

### **Examples:**

"Tengo que **irme** de aquí."

"I have to get outta here.".

This is literally, "I have to leave myself from here." If you leave out the "me" from the infinitive verb in this situation, you'll be understood, but the sentence will sound incomplete, and the listener will be waiting to hear more. If you stop at "ir", and say, "tengo que ir", it sounds incomplete in this type of scenario, because "ir" is one verb and "irse" is a different verb, with a different meaning.

Tengo que ir = I have to go.

If you say "Tengo que ir de aquí", it would be just wrong.

"Tengo que ir" could be correct in a different context, for example:

"Olvidé mi mochila, tengo que ir a la escuela por ella."

"I forgot my backpack; I have to go to school to get it."

**Estás envejeciendo**: When you want to tell someone they are getting old; you can say either of the following:

--Estás envejeciendo

--Te estás haciendo viejo

Envejecer is a verb that means, "To grow old".

"Envejeciendo" comes from the verb, "Envejecer" (to grow old). The word, *Envejeciendo* is the Present Participle of the verb *Envejecer*. The present participles in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

### **Examples:**

"Estoy **hablando**."

"I am **talking**."

From the verb, "*hablar*" (to talk)

"Estás **caminando**."

"You're **walking**."

From the verb, "*Caminar*" (to walk)

**Qué opinas**: When asking for an opinion, "what do you think?" You may use any of the following options:

¿Qué opinas?

Or

¿Qué piensas?

¿Tú que dices? / ¿Qué dices? / ¿Qué te parece?

**Tú vas a trabajar:** “Vas (you're going) comes from the verb, “ir”(to go). Vas is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Since he is talking about what his friend is **going to do**, he used the formula:

**ir + a + infinitive verb**

**Vas**(you're going) **a + trabajar**

The infinitive verb is, “*Trabajar*”(to work).

He used the personal subject pronoun, “**tú**” which is fine, but he could have left it out and said, “**Vas a trabajar...**”

**Te dije:** This is another example of the verb, “*Decir*” (to say/to tell) used in the preterite indicative tense. *Dije* is the *Yo* form of the verb used in that tense.

He started with the direct object pronoun, “**Te**” meaning “**You**”.

This is how the verb *Decir*(to say/to tell) is conjugated in the preterite indicative past tense:

**Yo** Dije – I said

**Tú** Dijiste – You said

**Él/Ella** Dijo – He/She said

**Usted** Dijo- You (formal) said

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Dijimos– We said

**Ustedes** Dijeron- You all said

**Ellos/Ellas** Dijeron – They Said

## Examples:

"**Te dije** la verdad."

"**I told** you the truth."

"Rosa me **dijo** una mentira."

"**Rosa told** me a lie."

"Ayer, me **dijeron** que no."

"Yesterday, **they** told me no."

## HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Spanish Party Slang](#)
- ✓ [Telling time in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Talking about the past in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

## Quizzes for Episode 20

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 21: The Proposal



## Synopsis:

After being with his girlfriend the past 8 years, Ramon and Elizabeth's anniversary nears. Ramón is finally ready to pop the big question as the two profess their love for each other. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gitty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

[Click here to learn more and purchase the audio!](#)

**Ramón:** Elizabeth, [te amo tanto](#). [Solo quiero decirte](#) eso.

**Ramon:** Elizabeth, I love you so much. I just want to tell you that.

**Elizabeth:** Awwwww, te amo también, Ramón.

**Elizabeth:** Awwwww, I love you too Ramon.

**Ramón:** ¿Sabes que la próxima semana va a ser nuestro aniversario?

**Ramon:** Do you know that next week is going to be our anniversary?

**Elizabeth:** Sí, lo sé cariño, el tiempo realmente vuela.

**Elizabeth:** Yes, I know sweetie, time really flies.

**Ramón:** Sí, ocho años el lunes, increíble... ¿Te acuerdas del día que nos conocimos?

**Ramon:** Yes, 8 years Monday, unbelievable...Do you remember the day we met?

**Elizabeth:** Claro, ¿cómo podría olvidarlo? Fue el día más hermoso del mundo.

**Elizabeth:** Of course, how can I forget? It was the most beautiful day ever.

**Ramón:** Así es, fue un día muy lindo, con clima perfecto y todo.

**Ramon:** That's right, it was a very beautiful day, perfect weather and everything.

**Elizabeth:** Sí, y te me acercaste, y me diste una flor. Me miraste a los ojos y me dijiste, "¿Cómo te llamas? Eres la mujer de mis sueños"

**Elizabeth:** Yes, and you approached me, and gave me a flower. You looked into my eyes and said, "what is your name? You are the woman of my dreams".

**Ramón:** ¡Guau! Y eres definitivamente la mujer de mis sueños. Te amo tanto Elizabeth.

**Ramon:** Wow! And you're definitely the woman of my dreams. I love you so much Elizabeth.

**Elizabeth:** Awwwww, te amo, Ramón. Eres el hombre de mis sueños también.

**Elizabeth:** Awwwww, I love you, Ramon. You are the man of my dreams too.

**Ramón:** Elizabeth, yo quiero estar contigo para siempre. Quiero hacerme viejo contigo, quiero tener hijos contigo.

**Ramon:** Elizabeth, I want to be with you forever. I want to grow old with you, I want to have children with you.

**Elizabeth:** Ay Dios mío, ¡Ramón!

**Elizabeth:** Oh my God, Ramon!

**Ramón:** ¿Quieres ser mi esposa? Te amo y quiero estar contigo el resto de mi vida.

**Ramon:** Do you want to be my wife? I love you and I want to be with you for the rest of my life.

**Elizabeth:** ¡Ay Dios mío! ¡Ay Dios mío! ¡Ay Dios mío! Ramón Álvarez, eres increíble...

**Elizabeth:** Oh my god! Oh my God! Oh my God! Ramon Alvarez, you're amazing...

**Ramón:** Pues, ¿vas a decir sí o no? Jajaja...

**Ramon:** Well, are you going to say yes or no?

Hahaha...

**Elizabeth:** Claro que sí, Ramón, claro. Me encantaría ser tu esposa. Quiero casarme contigo. ¡Ay Dios mío! Ese anillo de diamantes es precioso, ¡me encanta!

**Elizabeth:** Of course, yes, Ramon, of course. I'd love to be your wife. I want to marry you. Oh my God! That diamond ring is so precious, a I love it!

**Ramón:** Te mereces el mejor, mi vida.

**Ramon:** You deserve the best, honey.

**Elizabeth:** ¡No puedo esperar para la boda!

**Elizabeth:** I can't wait for the wedding!

***Fin de la historia.***

End of story.

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Te amo tanto:** When you want to tell someone, “I love you” in a romantic way, you’ll say, “Te amo”.

The word, “Amo”(I love) comes from the verb, “Amar”(to love). Amo is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The direct object pronoun was used, “**Te**” meaning, “You” is before the word, “amo”.

The word, “*Tanto*” means, “*So much*”.

This is how the verb, “Amar” (to love) is conjugated in the present indicative tense.

**Yo** Amo – I love

**Tú** Amas – You love

**Él/Ella** Ama – He/she loves

**Usted** Ama- You (formal) love

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Amamos – They love

**Ustedes** Aman- They love

**Ellos/ellas** Aman – They love

### Examples:

“¿La amas?”

“You love her?”

“¿Me amas?”

“Do you love me?”

“Te aman.”

“They love you.”

“Amo a mi esposa.”

“I love my wife.”

**Solo quiero decirte:** “Solo” means, “Just” or “Only”. In other ways, it also means, “Alone”.

Quiero (I want) comes from the verb, “Querer”(to want/to love). It’s used in the Yo form of the verb in the present indicative tense.

The verb “Decir”(to say/to tell) was right after the conjugated verb, “Quiero”( I want). He added the “**te**” to the end of the verb, making it, “To tell **you**”.

He also could have removed the **te** from the end of the nonconjugated verb and say, “Solo **te** quiero decir”.

We spoke about the verb, “Amar” (to love) in the previous. The verb Querer can also be used to talk about love, like if you say, “Te quiero”, it can mean, “I love you”.

If you wanted to tell a good friend of yours or someone you're seeing but not deeply in love with, you'd use the verb, “Querer” (to love) and not, “Amar”. Reserve Amar when you are in love with that person.

Although I've heard mothers tell their children, “Te amo” on numerous occasions and people that are in love say, “Te quiero” as well...

**Te acuerdas:** The word, “acuerdas” comes from the verb, “Acordar” (to agree). The word, “acuerdas” is the Tú form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The word “remember” can be translated to “acordarse de” or “recordar”, so the character could have said:

¿Te acuerdas de?, where “acuerdas” is the Informal second-person singular (tú) present indicative form of acordar (which means “agree to” “agree on”, “agree with”).

However, in this case, when you add a reflexive pronoun “me (acordarme), te (acordarte), se (acordarse), nos (acordarnos)”, it becomes “to remember/recall”.

“Acordarse” is a **pronominal verb** (verbs that are used with a reflexive pronoun such as **me, te, se, nos**). Other examples of pronominal verbs are “vestirse” (to get dress), *perderse* (to get lost).

To conjugate a pronominal verb, you always need to include a **reflexive pronoun**. So let us conjugate the verb “acordarse”.

Yo **me** acuerdo - I remember  
Tú **te** acuerdas - you remember  
Él/ella **se** acuerda - He/she remembers  
Usted **se** acuerda - You (formal) remember  
Nosotros **nos** acordamos - We remember  
Ustedes **se** acuerdan - You (all) remember  
Ellos **se** acuerdan - They remember

\*If you don't include the reflexive pronoun, the meaning changes...

### Example:

Yo acuerdo- I agree on; Tú acuerdas (you agree on) etc.

Acordarse is also an **intransitive verb**, meaning that it doesn't admit a direct complement and **always** need a prepositional complement introduced by the word “**de**”:

Me acuerdo ti - **wrong**  
Me acuerdo **de** ti – **correct**  
“I remember you.”

Ella nunca se acuerda mi nombre – **wrong**  
Ella nunca se acuerda **de** mi nombre – **correct**

“She never remembers my name.”

So, remember, if you use the verb “acordar” without a reflexive pronoun, it expresses an agreement with someone. If you add a reflexive pronoun, the meaning changes to “remember”.

Another option would be to use the verb, “recordar”.

## Examples:

"Do you remember more details?"

Would be translated to the following:

"¿Te acuerdas de más detalles?"

"¿**Recuerdas** más detalles?"

Where "recuerdas" is the informal second-person singular (tú) present indicative form of "recordar" (to remember). Unlike "acordarse", "recordar" is a transitive verb, so it appears accompanied by a direct complement, replaceable by the pronouns **lo/la**.

-Recuerdo que me dejaste solo (**Lo** recuerdo)

-I remember you left me alone (I remember **it**)

-Recuerdo su hermosa cara (**la** recuerdo)

-I remember her beautiful face (I remember **it**)

**Nos conocimos:** The word, "Conocimos" comes from the verb, "Conocer" (to know /to meet). *Conocimos* is the *Nosotros/Nosotras* version of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense.

The pronoun **nos** was used before the word *conocimos*, making it, "*We meet each other*" or "*we knew each other*". In this context, it means, "*We met each other*".

**Examples** of the verb, *conocer* (to know /to meet) are used in the preterite indicative past tense.

"**Te conocí** hace un año."

"**I met you** a year ago."

"**You met us** in a bar."

"**Nos conociste** en un bar."

**Podría olvidarlo:** You may use the following options:

*“¿Cómo podría olvidarlo?”*

*“How could I forget?”*

*“Nunca podría olvidarlo.”*

*“I could never forget.”*

*Podría* comes from verb, “Poder” (to be able to/can do something). *Podría* is the conjugated form of the word used in the conditional tense *usted, él, ella...*

The conditional tense in Spanish is used to talk about hypothetical situations and probabilities and to make polite requests.

*“Podría comprar esa camisa.”*

*“I could buy that shirt.”*

**Fue el día:** The word in here, “Fue” comes from the verb, “ir” (to go). *Fue* is the preterite indicative past tense *él/ella/Usted* version of the verb. When you want to say, “it was”, you can use “Fue”, since “it” is the “third person”.

**Examples:**

*“**It was** una buena época”*

*“**Fue** un buen tiempo.”*

*“**Fue** un placer conocerte.”*

*“**It was** a pleasure meeting you.”*

**Te me acercaste:** The word *acercaste* is the preterite indicative form of *acercar* in the second person singular (*tú*). It comes from the verb, “acercar” (to move closer).

If you say:

"Me acercaste" = "brought something to me"/ "brought me close to".

### Examples:

-Me acercaste a la puerta = you brought me near the door

-Me acercaste la mochila = you brought me the backpack

(the backpack was far away and I needed something, so you brought it closer).

The direct object pronoun, **Te**, meaning, "You" makes the sentence complete by specifying who was the one approaching.

Think about it this way:

**Tú** te acercaste **a mí**  
**Te me** acercaste  
**you** approached **me**

The pronouns "te" and "me" are replacing "tú" and "a mí" respectively.

**Me miraste**: The word, "Miraste" (you looked) comes from the verb, "Mirar" (to look). *Miraste* is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

The pronoun, "Me" was used, meaning, "me", together, it's, "You looked at **me**".

In that same sentence, she also said, "*me dijiste*" (you said to me or you told me). *Dijiste* comes from the verb,

“Decir” (to say or to tell) in the Tú form in the preterite indicative past tense.

**Quiero hacerme viejo:** “Quiero” is the first-person singular (yo) present indicative form of the verb, “querer” (to want).

“hacerme” is the compound of the infinitive hacer “to do/ to make” and the pronoun **me**.

“Viejo” means “old”.

So, the literal meaning would be “I want to make myself old”, but it is just how you say “I want to grow old/get old (with you).”

**Envejecer and Hacer** when talking about getting old...

You can't say “quiero envejecer**me viejo** contigo”, you have to pick either “envejecer” or “hacerme **vi**iejo”; and envejecer does not include a pronoun.

### **Example:**

For, “I want to grow old with you”...

-Quiero envejecer contigo

-Quiero hacer**me** viejo contigo

(the pronoun is with the verb “hacer” as used in the story.

To grow old = Hacerse viejo

(**hacerse mayor** would be a formal way)

It is a matter of preference. If you want to say “you are getting old”, you can say:

“Estás envejeciendo”

Or

**Te** estás haciendo Viejo

Or

Estás haciéndote **te** viejo

(You have to include the pronoun; you can't just say “estás haciendo viejo”).

**Me encantaría ser:** The first word, “encantaría” means, *I would love*. This is considered a bit more advanced Spanish, but it's important to talk about what you **WOULD LOVE** even at this level. I learned how to use it without knowing all the technicalities.

The word *encantaría* is the conditional form of the verb “encantar” (*to love*) in the first person/third person singular.

Remember when we spoke about “Gustar” (*to be pleasing to*)? This is the verb that word comes from.

So, if you want to say, “*I would love to be there*”, it's “*Me encantaría estar allí*”.

So “*Me encantaría*” is the conjugated form.

She then continues with the unconjugated verb, “Ser” (*To be*) making it, “*I would love to be...*”

**Te mereces:** The word, “*mereces*” (You deserve) comes from the verb, “*Merecer*”(to deserve). Mereces is the Tú (second person singular) form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

Can one say, “*Merezco lo mejor*”( deserve the best) OR *Me merezco el mejor* for example?

Yes, you can omit the pronoun without changing the meaning. Add it if you want to be more emphatic, that’s all. So, in here, Ramón could have said “*mereces el mejor*” and left it at that.

### **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [Te quiero vs te amo in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Romantic expressions in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Compliments in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Romantic Spanish movies you should watch](#)
- ✓ [Different ways to call a girl beautiful in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### **Quizzes for Episode 21**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 22: Fishing in the River



## Synopsis:

Felipe takes his granddaughter, Issabel to a very special and unique river, which is very close to a beautiful waterfall. She is amazed and determined to catch a fish. As she fishes, Felipe gives her some tips and tricks on how to become better at fishing. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Issabel:** Guau, este río es diferente abuelo, tiene una cascada. Me encanta mirar las cascadas y escuchar los sonidos. Ay, la naturaleza...

**Issabel:** Wow, this river is different grandpa, it has a waterfall. I love looking at waterfalls and hearing the sounds. Ah, nature...

**Felipe:** Sí, aquí es un gran lugar para pescar y hay muchos peces. Tienes tu red de pesca, caña de pescar y carrete, ¿verdad?

**Felipe:** Yes, here is a great place to fish and there're plenty of fish. You have your net, fishing rod, and reel, right?

**Issabel:** Sí, está allí en los arbustos junto a ese cubo blanco.

**Issabel:** Yes, it's over there in the bushes by that white bucket.

**Felipe:** Perfecto, veo el cubo. Ese cubo tiene cebos, tanto vivos como artificiales.

**Felipe:** Perfect, I see the bucket. That bucket has the bait, both live and artificial.

**Issabel:** Por favor, ¿puedes ayudarme a poner el anzuelo en la caña de pescar? Vi una lección en YouTube, pero se me olvidó.

**Ninah:** Please, can you help me to put hook on the fishing pole? I saw a lesson on YouTube, but I forgot.

**Felipe:** No hay problema, es muy fácil. No es tan difícil.

**Felipe:** No problem, it's very easy, it's not too difficult.

**Issabel:** Ay, ay, ay, ¡creo que casi atrapé un pez!

**Issabel:** Ohhh, ohhh, ohhh, I think I almost caught a fish!

**Felipe:** Ay, lo perdiste. Escúchame Issabel, cuando estás pescando, la paciencia es la clave. No tienes paciencia, tómate tu tiempo.

**Felipe:** Oh, you lost it. Listen to me Issabel, when you're fishing, patience is the key. You don't have patience, take your time.

**Issabel:** Ok, tendré más paciencia, abuelito. Esto es tan divertido. Creo que voy a atrapar un gran pez esta vez.

**Issabel:** Okay, I'll have more patience, grandpa. This is so much fun. I think I am going to catch a big fish this time...

**Felipe:** Te creo. Cuando estás pescando, también, hay que sentirte seguro de ti mismo. Te falta confianza.

**Felipe:** I believe you. When you're fishing, you also have to be confident. You lack confidence.

**Issabel:** Sí, lo sé. Estoy un poco ansiosa. Voy a cambiar el cebo ahora; usaré el cebo vivo en vez del artificial. ¡Voy a atrapar un gran pez!

**Issabel:** Yes, I know. I am a little bit anxious. I am going to change the bait now; I'll use the live bait instead of the artificial. I am going to catch a big fish!

**Felipe:** Si buscas peces grandes, hazlo lo más silenciosamente posible. Los peces grandes no crecen tan grandes por accidente, ¿sabes?

**Felipe:** If your searching for big fish, do it as quietly as possible. Big fish don't grow so big by accident, you

know?

**Issabel:** Ok, entiendo. ¡Gracias por los buenos consejos y trucos!

**Issabel:** Okay, I understand. Thanks for the great tips and tricks!

--**Fin de historia**--

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Tanto:** This word means, “so much/so many”, but when combined with “como” it can also mean, “Both”. In this case, use the formula “tanto...como”.

### **Examples:**

“Me gusta **tanto** el helado de chocolate **como** el de vainilla.”

“I like **both** chocolate and vanilla ice cream.”

“**Tanto** María **como** Pedro son de Guatemala.”

“**Both** María and Pedro are from Guatemala.”

**Puedes ayudarme:** *Puedes* (You can/can you) comes from the verb, “Poder” (to be able to/can do something). *Puedes* is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

She then follow up with the full, unconjugated verb “Ayudar” (to help), making it, “Puedes ayudar”. She added the “me”, making it, “Puedes ayudarme” (can you help me).

The “me” can be moved in front of the conjugated verb, “Puedes” to make it, “**Me** puedes ayudar”.

**Vi:** When you want to talk about the past and say, “I saw”, you say, “Vi”. That alone means, “I saw”. It comes from the verb, “Ver”(to see). Vi is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense.

**Examples** of how to use “Ver”(to see) in the preterite indicative tense.

“**Vi un** pez en el agua.”

“**I saw** a fish in the water.”

“¿**Me viste** en el río ayer?”

“**You saw** me in the river yesterday?”

**Atrapé un pez:** Atrapé comes from the verb, “atrapar”(to catch/to grab). Atrapé is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense.

**Examples** of this verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

“**Atrapé un** parajo.”

“**I caught** a bird.”.

“**Atraparon** muchas peces en el mar.”

“**They caught** a lot of fish in the sea.”

**Estás pescando:** Estás (You are/are you) is from the verb, “Estar”(to be). Estás is the Tú form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

“Pescando” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles

end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**. *Pescando* is from the verb, “Pescar”(to fish).

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### Examples:

Pensar (to think) — pensando (thinking)

Nadar (to swim) — nadando (swimming)

Estudiar (to study) — estudiando (studying)

**Abuelito**: The word for grandfather is, “Abuelo”. A diminutive, “ito” was added to the word, making it, “**Abuelito**”.

You can add diminutives to some words to indicate smallness or show affection.

Just like in English when you say “kitty” instead of “cat” or “doggy” instead of “dog”.

### Examples:

(Gato) Gat**ito** =kitty (male) /gatita (female)

(Casa) Cas**ita**= little house

(Abuela) Abuel**ita**= grandma

(Cara) Car**ita** = Little face

And so on...

**Te creo**: The word, “Creo”(I believe) comes from the verb, “Creer”(to believe). *Creo* is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

**Examples** of the verb, “Creer”(to believe) used in the present indicative tense.

“No te **creo**.”

“**I don’t believe** you.”

“¿Me **crees**?”

“**You believe** me?”

“No me creen.”

“**They don’t believe** me.”

“We believe him.”

“Le creemos.”

In the last example, the “**le**” can be, “**Him**”, or “**her**”.

**Hay que sentirte**: **Hay que + infinitive** is used to express the idea of “one must do something” or, “it is necessary to do something.” It is a more general expression and since there is no subject, the verb form **hay** is always used.

**Examples:**

“**Hay que tomar** un taxi.”

“It is necessary to take a taxi.”

“**Hay que estudiar** mucho.”

“One must study a lot.”

“**Hay que nadar** bien.”

“One must swim well.”

“**Hay que hablar** en clase.”

“One must speak in class.”

The learn more about the differences between, Tener Que, Hay Que and Deber, check out [this blog post on our Gritty Spanish blog!](#)

In the conversation, the infinitive/nonconjugated verb is, “*sentir*” (to feel).

You might be asking, “why is it ***sentir***(to feel) and not ***estar***(to be)?”

It could be “*estar*”.

### Example:

*“Hay que estar seguro de ti mismo.”*

This one would have the closest grammar structure to English, but you can express the idea of “be confident” in several ways in Spanish.

### Examples:

*“Tienes que estar seguro de ti mismo.”*

*“You have to be confident.”*

Or

-Tienes que confiar en ti mismo

-Tienes que estar seguro de ti mismo

-Tienes que sentirte seguro de ti mismo

I know that the English side of the translation says,

*“You also have to be confident”,* and it was translated to:

"Hay que sentirte seguro de ti mismo", which conveys the same idea, but "*también tienes que estar seguro de ti mismo*" has more logic for someone who is learning.

Finally, the pronoun "**te**" was added to "sentir" making it "sentir**te**" (you have to feel).

### **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [Spanish fishing vocabulary](#)
- ✓ [85 common Spanish phrases you should know](#)
- ✓ [Understanding Direct and Indirect Objects in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Animal names in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Family members in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### **Quizzes for Episode 22**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



## Episode 23: Car Accident



### Synopsis:

Adán and Alfredo spent the night at a friend's house party. It's now early morning, the sun is out and they get into a car accident on their way home. The guy they hit gets out his car and wonders who is going to pay for the damages to his car. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gitty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Adán:** [Esa fue](#) una fiesta increíble, Alfredo. Ahora es de mañana. Estoy tan cansado.

**Adam:** That was an awesome party, Alfred. It's now morning. I am so tired.

**Alfredo:** [Nos quedamos allí](#) toda la noche, ¡Ahora son las nueve de la mañana!

**Alfred:** We stayed there all night long, it's now 9 a.m. in the morning!

**Adán:** Sí, no dormimos ni un poco. Bueno, por lo menos tú dormiste una hora en el sofá en la sala.

**Adam:** Yes, we didn't even sleep at all. Well, at least you slept for an hour on the sofa in the living room.

**Alfredo:** Lo sé, solo mantén la vista en el camino. Sabes que no puedo conducir...¡¡¡Adán cuidado!!!

**Alfred:** I know, just keep your eyes on the road. You know I can't drive...Adam watch out!!!

*\*Se escucha un carro pegando a otro\**

*\*Sound of a car hitting another\**

**Adán:** Alfredo, ¿estás bien, hermano?

**Adam:** Alfred, are you okay brother?

**Alfredo:** Sí, ¡gracias a Dios! Qué bueno que tengo puesto el cinturón de seguridad... ¿Estás bien?

**Alfred:** Yes, thank God! Good thing I am wearing a seatbelt...Are you okay?

**Adán:** Solo me golpeé la cabeza en el tablero de mandos. Estaré bien.

**Adam:** I just hit my head on the dashboard. I'll be fine.

**Alfredo:** Sí, estarás bien, pero tienes sangre en tus labios.

**Alfred:** Yes, you'll be fine, but you have blood on your

lips.

**Adán:** ¡Ay no! Tenemos que salir del carro y ver si ese tipo está bien. Ay no, él está saliendo del carro y se está acercando.

**Adam:** Oh no! We have to get out of the car and see if that guy is okay. Oh no, he is getting out of his car and coming over.

**Manuel:** ¿Que estás haciendo? ¡Esto es tu culpa! ¿Quién va a pagar por esto?

**Manuel:** What are you doing? This is your fault! Who is going to pay for this?

**Adán:** No vamos a llamar a la policía e involucrar a nuestra compañía de seguros. Puedo darte algo de dinero.

**Adam:** We are not going to call the police and involve our insurance company. I can give you some money.

**Manuel:** Ok, creo que doscientos dólares estará bien. Tengo un parabrisas roto y necesito reparar el parachoques roto.

**Manuel:** Okay, I think two hundred dollars will be good. I have a broken windshield and I need to repair the broken bumper.

**Adán:** Tienes razón, fue mi culpa. Puedo darte doscientos dólares por los daños.

**Adam:** You're right, it was my fault. I can give you \$200 for the damages.

**Manuel:** Está bien, gracias, amigo. Que tengas un buen día. Y ten cuidado en el camino.

**Manuel:** Okay, thanks, man. Have a good day. And be careful on the road.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Esa fue:** *Esa* means, “That”. The word in here, “Fue” comes from the verb, “ir”(to go). *Fue* is the preterite indicative tense *él/ella/Usted* form of the verb. When you want to say, “it was”, you can use “Fue”, since “it” is the “third person”.

### **Examples:**

**“It was** a good time.”

**“Fue** una buena época.”

**“Fue** un placer conocerte.”

**“It was** a pleasure meeting you.”

**Nos quedamos allí:** The word, “Quedamos” comes from the verb, “Quedar”(to stay). *Quedamos* is the *We* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

The reflexive pronoun, “nos”(we/us) was before the word, “Quedamos”.

*Allí* = there/over there. You can also use, “*allá*” when talking about “Over there/ there”.

**No dormimos ni un poco:** Let's start with the word "Ni".

"Ni" means "not even". In most cases, you can use "ni" and "ni siquiera" interchangeably

If you want to say, "I don't know", then, of course it's, "No lo sé".

"Ni" by itself can mean "not even". "Ni" is an intensifier. In most cases, you can use "ni" and "ni siquiera" interchangeably, yes, but "ni" is an independent term, it does not come from "ni siquiera".

### **Example:**

*"Nadie vino a mi fiesta de cumpleaños, **ni** mi mamá."*

Or

*"Nadie vino a mi fiesta de cumpleaños, **ni si quiera** mi mamá."*

*"No one came to my birthday party, **not even** my mom."*

"Ni" can also mean "nor". When you use "neither +nor" in a sentence, in Spanish you can use the word Ni 1 or 2 times in the sentence.

### **Examples:**

*"No puedo comer **Ni** dormir cuando estoy preocupada."*

Or

"No puedo **Ni** comer **Ni** dormir cuando estoy preocupada."

"I can't neither eat nor sleep when I'm worried."

"No fue malo **Ni** bueno."

Or

"No fue **Ni** malo **Ni** bueno."

"It was neither good **nor** bad."

Finally, "un poco" means "a little/ a bit".

**Tú dormiste:** "Dormiste" (You slept) comes from the verb, "Dormir" (to sleep). *Dormiste* is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense.

This is how the verb, "dormir" (to sleep) is conjugated in the **present indicative tense**.

**Yo** Duermo - I sleep

**Tú** Duermes -You (informal) sleep

**Él/ella** Duerme - He/she/ sleeps

**Usted** Duerme - You (formal) sleep

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Dormimos - We sleep

**Ustedes** Duermen - You all sleep

**Ellos/ellas** Duermen - They sleep

This is how the verb, "dormir" (to sleep) is conjugated in the **preterite indicative past tense**.

**Yo** Dormí - I slept

**Tú** Dormiste -You (informal) slept

**Él/Ella** Durmió - He/she slept

**Usted** Durmió - You (formal) slept

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Dormimos - We slept

**Ustedes** Durmieron - You all slept

**Ellos/ellas** Durmieron - They slept

**mantén la vista**: The word *mantén* is the imperative/command form of the verb *mantener* in the second person singular (tú form). The verb, *mantener* has several meanings, but in this context means, "to keep", for example:

### Examples:

"Por favor, *mantén la calma*."

"Please, keep calm."

"*Mantén tus ojos en mí*."

"Keep your eyes on me."

*La vista* literally means, "The view" or "the sight", but as you can see on the English it's "Your eyes".

**¡Cuidado!**: So, if you ever want to yell out "Watch Out!", *¡Cuidado!* or "*¡Ten cuidado!*" are great options.

He could have also said:

"**Ojo** con el carro."

"**Watch out** for the car."

The word *Ojo* literally means, "Eye".

### More examples:

"**Ojo** con la sopa, *está caliente*"

"**Be careful** with the soup, it is hot."

"**Ojo** con esa muchacha, *te dará una puñalada por la*

espalda."

"**Be careful** with that girl, she is going to stab you in the back."

A sign could say:

"¡Ojo! Piso mojado."

"**Watch out!** Wet floor."

Just don't use "¡Ojo!" by itself.

**Se escucha**: In here, we are using the passive voice. This is considered more advanced Spanish, but I am sure you've seen it around.

The passive voice is generally used to talk about a person or object without making mention of whoever or whatever is performing the action on that person or object.

### **Examples:**

"Se vende queso."

"Cheese is sold here."

"Se vende ropa aquí."

"Clothes is sold here."

In this case, "Se escucha un carro pegando otro" is, "Sound of car hitting another".

You won't see too much of the passive voice being used in this version of Gritty Spanish, but if you are curious about learning more about the mysterious se, **be sure to check out this post** on the Gritty Spanish blog!

**Tengo puesto**: The word "Tengo" (I have) is from the verb, "Tener" (to have). *Tengo* is the Yo form of the verb used in the indicative present tense.

The word, "Puesto" is the past participle of poner ("to put")

### Examples:

*"Tengo puesto un suéter azul."*

*"I am wearing a blue sweater."*

*"¿Quieres saber qué tengo puesto?"*

*"Do you want to know what I am wearing?"*

You can say either *"tener puesto"* or *"llevar puesto"*.

Mainly with clothes, but in this case, also with a seatbelt.

He could have also said the following:

*"Qué bueno que tengo puesto el cinturón de seguridad."*

*"Qué bueno que llevo puesto el cinturón de seguridad."*

*"Qué bueno que estoy usando el cinturón de seguridad."*

**Me golpeé:** Golpeé is from the verb, *"golpear"* (to hit). Golpeé is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense. He is using the verb reflexively, this is why the *"me"* is in front of the conjugated word. It's like saying, *"I hit myself"*.

### Example:

*"Me **golpeé** la rodilla en la mesa."*

*"I **hit** my knee on the table."*

**Estaré bien:** *Estaré* (I will be) is from the verb, *"Estar"* (to be). *"Estaré"* is the *"Yo"* form of the verb used in the future tense.

Here is how you'll use the verb *"Estar"* in the future tense:

**Yo** Estaré = I **WILL** be.

**Tú** Estarás = You **WILL** be.

**Él/ella/** Estará = She/He **WILL** be.

**Usted** Estará = You (formal) **WILL** be

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Estaremos = We **WILL** be.

**Ustedes** Estarán= You all **WILL** be.

**Ellos/Ellas** Estarán = They **WILL** be.

### Examples:

*"**Estaré** en tu casa pronto."*

*"I'll **be** in your house soon."*

*"**Ella estará** allí en catorce minutos."*

*"**She'll be** there in 14 minutes."*

**Estarás bien:** *Estarás*"(You **will** be) is from the verb, "Estar"(to be). "Estarás" is the "Tú" form of the verb used in the future tense.

### Example:

*"Deja de preocuparte tanto, **estarás** bien."*

*"Stop worrying so much, **you'll be** fine."*

**Tenemos que salir:** *Tenemos* (we have) comes from the verb, "Tener"(to have).

*Tenemos* is the *Nosotros/Nosotras* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

### -Tener Que-

In Spanish, **tener que**, is the way to say that we *need to* or *have to* do something. When we use **tener que**, we need

to change the verb, *tener* (to have), so it agrees with the person or people that have to do something.

So, before we use it in a sentence, we need to ask ourselves: “Who needs to do something?”, “Do you need to do something?” “Do they need to do something?” “Do I need to do something?”

### - **Tener Que + Infinitive** -

They first, conjugated the word, “Tener”(to have) and made it “Tenemos”(we have).

The word that follows “**que**” is an infinitive/nonconjugated verb, such as *estudiar* (to study), *ir* (to go) or *viajar* (to travel). You do not need to change the infinitive in any way. Just choose the word for the action that you want to describe, and put it after the correct form of **tener que**.

The verb “*Salir*”(to leave) was used.

Check out these **examples**:

**Tengo que** leer - I have to read.

**Tengo que** ir - I have to go.

**Tiene que** trabajar – He/she/usted has to work.

**Tienen que** hablar -They have to speak.

**Tenemos** que nadar - We have to swim.

Check out our blog post on [Spanish “tener” expressions](#).

**Él está saliendo**: They are talking about the other guy, so this is why the word, “*está*” was used. *Está* is the third person, *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb, “*Estar*”(to be) in the present indicative tense.

*Saliendo* is from the verb, “*Salir*”(to leave /to go out).

“*Saliendo*” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### **Examples:**

decir (to say/to tell) — diciendo (saying)

morir (to die) — muriendo (dying)

abrir (to open) — abriendo (opening)

venir (to come) — viniendo (coming)

**Se está acercando**: There are still talking about the other guy, so this is why the word, “*está*” was used. *Está* is the third person, *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb, “*Estar*”(to be) in the present indicative tense.

*Acercando* is from the verb, “*Acercar*”(to move closer).

“*Acercando*” is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

The reflexive pronoun, “*se*” was used since they are talking about a third party, the guy getting out his car. He could have said “*está acercándose*” too. If it were two people getting out the car, it would still be, “*Se*”.

**Example:** “*Se están acercando*”.

I know I've asked this question before as a Spanish-language learner, *"If the 'se' wasn't there, would it make sense? In a situation like this, do native speakers sometimes forget using the se?"*

A native speaker answered:

"No, this would not make sense without the '**se**', and a Spanish speaker would not forget to use it.

The sentence says:

*"Está saliendo del carro y **se** está acercando."*

### **When we say the following:**

*Se está acercando.* "Se" = he/she/that We know that a he/ she or something is coming over.

**If we removed** the reflexive pronoun and say:

*Está acercado* – We are going to ask, who is coming over? Or what is coming over? We wouldn't know."

Many actions related to personal care or daily routines are reflexive, but other verbs can be reflexive as well.

**Puedo darte**: *Puedo* comes from the verb, "Poder"(to be able to/can do something). *Puedo* is the Yo form of the verb used in the indicative present tense.

*Dar* is a verb that means, "to give". He then added the "**te**" to it making it, "**darte**"(to give you).

**Estará bien**: "*Estará*"(He/she/it will be) is from the verb, "*Estar*"(to be). "*Estará*" is the "El/ella/usted" form of the

verb used in the future indicative tense. The third party is the money, this is why that conjugated form of the verb was used.

**Fue mi culpa**: As mentioned before, the word, “Fue” comes from the verb, “ir”(to go). *Fue* is the preterite tense él/ella/Usted version of the verb. When you want to say, “it was”, you can use “Fue”, since “it” is the “third person”.

*Fue mi culpa* = “It was my fault” as you see on the English side of the transcript.

So how do you say, “It’s my fault” using the present tense? “*Es mi culpa*”.

The word, “culpa” actually comes from the verb, “Culpar”(to blame).

**Ten cuidado**: You’ll be saying this a lot in Spanish, “Ten Cuidado”. The word, “Ten” is a direct command used in the Tú form. “Ten” comes from the verb, “Tener”(to have).

So, if you ever want to tell someone to be careful, just tell him/her, “Ten cuidado”.



## HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Accidental expressions in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Ways to express annoyance in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Spanish words to say when you’re upset](#)
- ✓ [39 ways to express surprise in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Traffic signs in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

## Quizzes for Episode 23

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 24: Social Media



## **Synopsis:**

While walking down the street, Clarita bumped into a friend, Fior. She wonders why she never accepted her Facebook friend request. They both then speak about their displeasures with social media. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Clarita:** Oye amiga, ¿Cómo te va? ¿Qué tal?

**Clarita:** Hey my friend, how's it going? What's up?

**Fior:** Todo está bien, no puedo quejarme. Visitaré a mi abuela en la ciudad.

**Fior:** Everything is okay, I can't complain. I'll visit my grandma in the city.

**Clarita:** Qué bien. Dile que yo dije hola. Yo te envié una solicitud de amistad el otro día y nunca me aceptaste, ¿por qué no?

**Clarita:** How nice. Tell her I said hello. I sent you a friend request the other day and you never accepted me, why not?

**Clarita:** Hmmm, eso es lo que todos dicen. Dame tu teléfono, déjame ver. Hmmm, ¿y todavía tienes todas las aplicaciones? Tienes Instagram, Facebook, Snapchat, ¡Las tienes todas!

**Clarita:** Hmmm, that's what they all say. Give me your phone, let me see. Hmmm, and you still have all the apps? You have Instagram, Facebook, Snapchat, you have them all!

**Fior:** Bueno, déjame aclararlo. Ya no les hago caso a mis alertas de las redes sociales. De hecho, las desactivé.

**Fior:** Well, let me clarify. I don't pay attention to my social media alerts anymore. In fact, I turned them off.

**Clarita:** Entiendo lo que dices. La gente habla demasiado de su vida personal, lo cual no es tan malo. Pero el drama, puedo vivir sin eso.

**Clarita:** I understand what you mean. People talk about their personal lives too much, which is not too bad. But the drama, I can live without that.

**Fior:** Sí, ¡lo sé! Veo cómo las relaciones prosperan y terminan en las redes sociales todos los días, qué lástima....

**Fior:** Yes, I know! I see relationships grow and fall apart on social media every day, what a shame...

**Clarita:** Sí, por eso solo uso mensajes de texto y correos ahora. No quiero hacer clic en “me gusta” en todo lo que veo. Deberían tener un botón que diga, “Lo odio”.

**Clarita:** Yes, that's why I only use text messages and email now. I don't want to click “Like” for everything I see. They should have a button that says, “I hate”.

**Fior:** Jajajaja, estoy de acuerdo contigo Clarita. La gente usa sus teléfonos para sacar fotos, grabar todo y lo publican en las redes sociales.

**Fior:** Hahaha, I agree with you. People use their phones to take pictures, record everything and post it on social media.

**Clarita:** Sí, las peleas y todo. Las peleas dominan el Internet ahora. No quiero ver eso. No tengo tiempo para eso.

**Clarita:** Yes, fights and everything too. The fights dominate the Internet now, I don't want to see that. I don't have time for that.

**Fior:** Quiero decir, es genial hablar con la familia y amigos del pasado. Además, no me gustan los anuncios.

**Fior:** I mean, it's a great thing to talk with the family, and friends from the past. Also, I don't like the ads.

**Clarita:** Bueno, hasta la próxima amiga. Tienes mi número, llámame de vez en cuando.

**Clarita:** Well, until next time friend. You have my number, call me once in a while.

**Fior:** Sí, lo haré.

**Fior:** Yes, will do.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**¿Cómo te va?**: When you want to say, “How’s it going”, you can use the verb, “ir”(to go). The last word, “va” is from the verb *ir*(to go), used in the *Él/ella/usted* form in the present indicative tense.

The first word, “Cómo” means, “How”.

The direct object pronoun, “te” was used, meaning, “You”.

This literally makes it, “How’s it going for you”.

**Puedo quejarme**: *Puedo* comes from the verb, “Poder”(to be able to/can do something). *Puedo* is the *Yo* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

“Quejarse” is a pronominal verb. Pronominal verbs can only be conjugated with a pronoun.

Technically, reflexive verbs are a subcategory of pronominal verbs.

Some examples of pronominal verbs are: *arrepentirse*, *quedarse*, *dignarse*. To conjugate them, you need the pronoun:

**Example:**

“Yo **me** quejo.”

You can't say:

“Yo **quejo**.”

**Visitaré**: This word is the future indicative tense of the verb, “Visitar” (to visit). *Visitaré* is the Yo form of the verb in that tense.

**Example:**

“Te **visitaré** mañana.”

“I'll **visit** you tomorrow.”

“**Visitarás** a tu madre en la ciudad?”

“**Will you visit** your mom in the city?”

**Dile que yo dije hola**: The first word, “Dile” comes from the verb, “Decir” (to tell/to say).

Let's break it down.

When you give someone a command, “Say”, like, “**Say something**”, for example.

If you wanted to use the Tú form of the command, then it's simply, “Di”. So if someone won't speak, you can say, “**Di algo**”(**say** something).

So, this is where, “**Dile**” comes from.

The, “le” she added is an indirect object pronoun that can mean, “him/her”. It's her since they were talking about her grandma.

Que = That

- **Yo dije** -

*Dije* comes from the word, “Decir”(to say /to tell). *Dije*(I say) is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense. The Yo wasn't necessary, but it's fine too.

*Dile que yo dije hola* = Tell her that I said hi.

Not a literal translation, but you often hear, “*dile que la mando a saludar*” or “*dile que hola de mi parte*”.

**Te envié:** The word, *envié*(I sent) is from the verb, “*Enviar*”(to send). *Envié* is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense. The indirect object pronoun “**te**” represents, “**You**”. *Te envié*, means, “I sent you”.

**Me aceptaste:** The word, *aceptaste* is from the verb, “*aceptar*”(to send). *Aceptaste* is the Tú form of the verb used in the indicative preterite tense. The pronoun “**me**” represents, “**me**”.

If this phrase was used in the present tense to say, “you accept me” then it would be, “Me aceptas”.

**Lo que:** “Lo que” means that you are explaining something in a direct and a more defined matter. Most of the time, *lo que* = what and *que* = that.

“Qué” (with an accent on the “e”) is the interrogative “what”. If you want to translate the English word “what” and it’s not in a questioning sense, then you can say “lo que”.

### Examples:

“**Lo que** más me gusta del parque son los columpios.”

“**What** I like the most about the park are the swings.”

“**Lo que** dijiste es una mentira.”

“**What** you said is a lie.”

“No puedo creer **lo que** hizo.”

“I can’t believe **what** he did.”

“**lo que**” can also mean “that.”

### Example:

“No todo **lo que** brilla es oro.”

“Not everything **that** shines is gold.”

“lo que” could also be rendered in English as “that which”

“Le gustan las películas de guerra, **lo que** me parece muy aburrido.”

“He likes war movies, **which** I find very boring.”

"lo que" does not refer to people or things but an idea or situation.

Normally, it can be used in place of "la cosa que" or "aquello que"(that which, or the thing that).

**Dame:** This word comes from the verb, "Dar"(to give). When you want to give someone a command and say, "Give", the word is "Da". "Da" is the Tú form of the verb when used in the command/imperative mood.

But who? She said "me", so this is why that direct object pronoun was used at the end of the command.

If it was, "Give **her/him**", then it would be, "**Dale**".

If it was, "Give **us**", it would be, "**Danos**".

**Déjame ver:** Déjame is from the verb, "Dejar"(to leave/to let/to allow). If you ever want to give someone a command to "let" you do something, then you first say, "Deja" that's the tú of the verb, "Dejar" used in the imperative/command, but "Let" who? **Me!**

This is why she added the "me" to the command, which makes it, "**Déjame**"(Let me).

The verb, "Ver"(to see) was after, making, it "Let me see"(déjame ver)

If you don't want to be bothered, you can use *déjame* to get people away from you.

**Examples:**

¡Déjame! = Leave me!

¡Déjame en paz! = Leave me alone!

*Déjame en paz* literally means, “Leave me in peace”.

Paz = Peace.

**Las tienes**: *Tienes* comes from the verb, “Tener” (to have). *Tienes* is the *Tú* form of the verb when conjugated in the present indicative tense.

The “**Las**” is used because they are talking about, “**Las Aplicaciones**”. So here, “**las**” means, “*Them*”. If they were talking about one application, then, she would have said, “**La tienes**”.

**Déjame aclararlo**: Another example using *Déjame*, which is from the verb, “*Dejar*” (to leave/to let/to allow). If you ever want to give someone a command to “let” you do something, then you first say, “*Deja*” that’s the *tú* of the verb, “*Dejar*” used in the imperative/command, but “*Let*” who? **Me!**

The verb, “*aclarar*” means, “to clarify” or “to get right”.

“*Clarificar*” (to clarify) is correct too. It is used more and more, mainly due to influence from English, but “**aclarar**” is more natural Spanish (when used with the meaning of “clarify/explain”)

The “*Lo*” was attached to the verb, now it’s “**aclararlo**” (to clarify **it**). In Spanish, the “*lo*” completes the sentence.

If she had just said, “*déjame aclarar*”, then her friend would have been waiting to hear more, but if she didn’t add the “Lo”.

**No les hago caso**: When you say you or someone else don’t pay attention to something or someone, you can use, “*Hacer caso*” together this means, “*to take notice of/to listen to*”.

The full/unconjugated verb here is, “*Hacer*”(to do/to make).

The **Hago** from “No les **hago** caso” in the conversation is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

To say, “*They don’t pay me attention*”, you’ll say, “No **me hacen caso**”. The **Me** is the indirect object pronoun.

### **Example:**

“Ya no **me haces** caso.”

“You don’t pay me no mind anymore.”

In the story, she added the indirect object pronoun “**les**” because they are talking about “*The alerts*”, If we are talking about just one alert, she would have said “ya no **le** hago caso...”.

If you’re telling a friend about a nice lady you saw yesterday but she didn’t pay you no mind, then it’s still “*hacer caso*” but since we are talking about yesterday, then you have to grab the appropriate form of the verb in the preterite indicative tense.

"No **me hizo** caso"

"She didn't pay me no mind".

"Hizo" in the example is the *Él/Ella/usted* form of the verb in the indicative preterite past tense.

**Las desactivé**: "Las" represents, the applications (*las aplicaciones*).

*desactivé* comes from the verb, "desactivar" (to deactivate/ to defuse).

*desactivé* is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense.

"*Las desactivé*" means, "*I turned them off*". She is talking about, "**Las aplicaciones**".

**Deberían tener**: In Spanish, when you're talking about what you or someone else **HAVE TO DO**, you use, "**Tener que + an infinitive/unconjugated verb**", when you're talking about what you or someone else **MUST DO**, you can use the verb "Deber" (to owe /must).

But how about when you or someone else **SHOULD/WOULD/COULD DO**?

This is more advanced Spanish, but it's cool if you are aware of this word.

The word **deberían** (They should) is the third-person plural (ellos, ellas) conditional form of the verb, *deber* (to owe/must).

**The conditional tense** is frequently used to express probability, possibility, wonder or conjecture, and is usually translated as *would, could, must have or probably*.

**Examples:**

**"Deberían** de poner aromatizante en el baño."

**"They should** put air freshener in the bathroom."

**"Deberías** de hacer la tarea antes de salir."

**"You should** do your homework before you go out."

**Lo odio:** Oído "I hate" comes from the verb, "Odiar" (to hate). The "**lo**" in there means, "**it**". Making the phrase, "Yo **lo** odio", "**I hate it**". She could have left out the subject pronoun, "Yo", making it, "Lo odio", since "Odio" is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

She needed that "Lo" in there to make it complete. If she had said, "Odio", then her friend would be looking her to say more. If she had said someone like, "Odio cuando Juan hace eso" (I hate it when John does that), that would be a different story.

**Quiero decir:** When you want to say, "I mean..." in Spanish, you can use the "Quiero decir". Quiero is from the verb, "Querer" (to want /to love). Quiero is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. The verb, "Decir" (to say/to tell) followed.

So, when you say, "Quiero decir", you are literally saying, "I want to say/tell", but you can say it to mean, "I mean".

**Example:**

“¿Entiendes lo que **quiero decir**?”

“Do you understand what **I mean**?”

“Sí, ¡por supuesto!”

“Yes, of course, I do!”

**Lo haré**: If someone commands you do to something and you agree and want to do it, and you respond to them, “Will do”, you can say, “*lo haré*”. This comes from the verb, “*hacer*” (to do/to make).

Of course you can also use the verb, “*ir*” (to go) and talk about what you’re **going to do** and say, “*Voy a hacerlo*” (I am going to do it).

But she used the **future indicative tense** in the **Yo** form, “*haré*” (I will do).

If she had just said “*haré*”, then the friend would have looked at her and waited for her to say more. So, when you put the “**lo**” meaning, “*it*”, then it completes the phrase.

The friend could have also asked her in the future tense, “Will you do it?” (¿*lo harás?*).

These can also work:

“*Eso haré*”...

Literally meaning, “*That I’ll do*”.

Or

“*Lo voy a hacer*.”

“*I am going to do it*.”

Lo haré (the one in the story) is the shortest one. But “haré” by itself would not make sense.

### **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [97 common greetings in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Ways to say goodbye in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Texting abbreviations in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [3Understanding the Spanish conditional tense](#)
- ✓ [Understanding when to use “lo que” in Spanish](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### **Quizzes for Episode 24**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 25: Sales Call



## Synopsis:

Alma Gonzalez is an aggressive sales specialist for a famous cruise line. Today, she calls Orlando and tries to convince him to purchase a 7-day cruise vacation for half off the normal price. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

[Click here to learn more and purchase the audio!](#)

*\*El teléfono suena\**

*\*The phone rings\**

**Orlando:** Hola y buenos días.

**Orlando:** Hello and Good morning.

**Alma González:** Hola y buenos días. ¿Puedo hablar con Orlando, por favor?

**Alma Gonzalez:** Hello and good morning. May I speak with Orlando, please?

**Orlando:** Lo siento, pero, no soy Orlando, ¿quién habla?

**Orlando:** I am sorry, but, I am not Orlando, who is it?

**Alma González:** Me llamo Alma González y trabajo para una línea de cruceros popular. Estoy llamándole por una oferta especial que tenemos ahora.

**Alma Gonzalez:** My name is Alma Gonzalez and I work for a popular cruise line. I am calling you about a special deal we have now.

**Orlando:** Lo siento, pero tienes el número equivocado. ¿Cómo encontraste mi número? No conozco a Orlando.

**Orlando:** I am sorry, but you have the wrong number. How did you find my number? I don't know Orlando.

**Alma González:** Tengo el número correcto, señor. Lo tengo aquí en el archivo. Si no es Orlando, ¿puede ponerlo al teléfono por favor?

**Alma Gonzalez:** I have the correct number, sir. I have it here on file. If you're not Orlando, can you please put him on the phone?

**Orlando:** ¿Cuántas veces tengo que decirte que no soy Orlando?

**Orlando:** How many times do I have to tell you that I am not Orlando?

**Alma González:** Como sea. Bueno, voy a explicar algo y continuar nuestra conversación, Orlando...

**Alma Gonzalez:** Whatever you say. Well, I am going to explain something and continue our conversation, Orlando...

**Orlando:** Mujer, ¿estás loca o qué? ¿No me escuchaste? Tú no escuchas para nada.

**Orlando:** Lady, are crazy or something? You didn't hear me? You don't listen at all.

**Alma González:** Lo oí, pero usted está escuchando. No me ha colgado todavía.

**Alma Gonzalez:** I heard you, but you're listening. You haven't hung up on me yet.

**Orlando:** Bueno, debería colgarte el teléfono. Bueno, ¿qué estás vendiendo? Eres muy persistente, demasiado persistente. Eres una excelente vendedora.

**Orlando:** Well, I should hang up the phone on you. Well, what are you selling? You're very persistent, too persistent. You're an excellent sales-woman.

**Alma González:** Gracias por el cumplido, es mi trabajo. Bueno, tenemos una oferta muy especial. Puede adquirir un crucero de siete días al Caribe y América del Sur por la mitad de precio.

**Alma Gonzalez:** Thanks for the compliment, it's my job. Well, we have a very special sale. You can get a 7-day

cruise to The Caribbean and South America for half-off.

**Orlando:** ¿A dónde va el crucero exactamente? ¿De dónde sale?

**Orlando:** Where is the cruise going exactly? Where is it leaving from?

**Alma González:** Bueno, sale del puerto en Miami. Tiene que comprar un vuelo para Miami. De allí, va a ir a Puerto Rico y algunas otras islas.

**Alma Gonzalez:** Well, it leaves from the port in Miami. You have to purchase a flight to Miami. From there, it's going to Puerto Rico and some other islands.

**Orlando:** ¿Cuánto va a costar todo esto exactamente?

**Orlando:** How much is all this going to cost exactly?

**Alma González:** Normalmente, cuesta dos mil dólares, pero pagará solo mil dólares si compra ahora. ¿Está interesado?

**Alma Gonzalez:** Normally, it costs 2,000 dollars, but you'll pay only \$1,000 if you buy now. Are you interested?

**Orlando:** Lo siento, no tengo dinero. No puedo comprar esto ahora. No estoy interesado...

**Orlando:** I am sorry, I don't have money. I can't afford this right now. I am not interested...

**\*\*Él cuelga el teléfono\*\***

**\*\*He hangs up phone\*\***

**Alma González:** ¡Qué hombre tan grosero! Voy a llamar a alguien más.

**Alma Gonzalez:** What a rude man! I am going to call someone else.

*\*El teléfono suena\**

*\*\*Phone rings\*\**

**Sofía:** Hola...

**Sofía:** Hello...

**Alma González:** Hola, ¿puedo hablar con Sofía, por favor?

**Alma Gonzalez:** Hello, may I speak with Sofia, please?

**Sofía:** Sofia está hablando. ¿Quién eres tú? ¿Quién habla?"

**Sofia:** Sofia is speaking. Who are you? Who is speaking?

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--



## BREAKING IT ALL DOWN

**Lo siento:** "Lo siento", which literally means, "I feel it", is what Spanish speakers say when they feel bad about something, just like how English speakers say "Sorry" when they feel bad about something.

*Siento* comes from the verb, "*Sentir*" (to feel). *Siento* is the Yo form of the verb used in the indicative present tense.

### Examples:

**"Lo siento, no te vi ayer."**

**"I am sorry, I didn't see you yesterday."**

**"Lo siento, no tengo suficiente dinero."**

**"I am sorry, I don't have enough money."**

**Estoy llamándole:** *Estoy* is from the verb, "*Estar*" (to be). *Estoy* is the Yo form of the verb used in the indicative present tense. For example, "*Estoy bien*" (I am fine).

*Llamando* is from the verb, "*Llamar*" (to call). "*Llamando*" is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

She is speaking formally to him, so instead of saying, "*Estoy llamándote*", she uses the indirect object pronoun and says, "*Estoy llamándole*".

It's almost like she is talking about someone else right? Since "*le*" can also be, "*him/her*". If she had said, *llamándolo* it would still be formal since "*Lo*" is also an indirect object pronoun, which means "*Him*".

**Cómo encontraste:** The word, "*Encontraste*" comes from the verb, "*Encontrar*" (to find). "*Encontraste*" is the Tú form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

The complete sentence is, "*¿Cómo **encontraste** mi número?*" Making it, "*How **you found** my number?*".

"*Cómo conseguiste*" would be another valid alternative.

The word, “conseguiste” comes from the verb, “conseguir”(to get). “conseguiste” is the Tú form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

**No conozco a Orlando:** If you ever wanted to say, “I don’t know you”, you would use the direct object pronoun, “**Te**”, meaning, “**you**” and say, “No **te** conozco”. But he said, “No conozco...”(I don’t know...) Orlando...

He added the **a** followed by the name.

If he wanted to say, “I don’t know him”, he could have said, “No **lo** conozco”.

Now, if you want to say, “I know you” it would just be, “Te conozco” adding the, “no” makes it, “I don’t know you”(No te conozco).

How do you say, “Do you know me?”.

You start with yourself, “me”, and use the Tú form of the verb, “Conocer”(to know) and say, “¿Me conoces?”.

### **Other examples:**

“**Lo conozco bien.**”

“**I know him well.**”

“**No la conocemos bien.**”

“**We don’t know her well.**”

“**Me conocen.**”

“**They know me.**”

“**We know each other well.**”

“**Nos conocemos bien.**”

**Lo tengo:** *Tengo* is from the verb, “*Tener*”(to have).

“*Tengo*” is the Yo form of the verb used in the indicative present tense. She is talking about **the** number (**el** número), so this is why she uses, “Lo” first. If they were talking about **the** clothes (**la** ropa), then she would have said, “**la** tengo”.

If she was talking about **the** cars (**los** carros), then it would have been, “**Los** tengo”(I have them).

**Puede ponerlo:** *Puede* comes from the verb, “*poder*”(to be able to/can do something). *Puede* is the *Él/Ella/usted* form of the verb, used in the present indicative tense. She is speaking formally, so, this is why she didn't say, “*Puedes*”.

The verb, “*Poner*” means, “*To put*”. She then added the direct object pronoun, “*lo*” to the end of the verb, making it, “*ponerlo*”(to put **him**). In this case, she already knows it's a him, so the “*lo*” was used... Could she has said, “*le*”? Yes, but it is unlikely because she already knows that she wants to talk with a him.

**Como sea:** This phrase means, “*Whatever*” as you can see reading the English side of the transcript. But it can also mean, “*no matter what*”, “*whatever it takes*”, “*at all cost*”, “*be that as it may*”, “*at any rate*”, “*whatever the case*”, “*say what you will*”, etc. It's all depends on the context.

**No me escuchaste:** The word, “*Escuchaste*” is from the verb, “*Escuchar*”(to listen). *Escuchaste* is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the indicative preterite tense. “**Me**” is the

subject pronoun, making it, “*You didn’t hear me?*” thanks to the “No”.

**Lo oí:** The little word, “oí”(I heard) comes from the verb, “Oír”(to hear /to listen to). Oí is the Yo form of the verb used in the indicative preterite tense. So, if you want to say, “*I heard you*” it’s, “*Te oí*”.

She is speaking to the guy formally, so instead of using, “**te**”, she said, “**le**”, which is the indirect object pronoun.

Could she had said, “*Lo escucho*”? Can we use Oír and Escuchar interchangeably?

Oír is the physical activity of sound falling on the ears. It doesn’t really require any effort from the person. “Escuchar” is the ability to pay attention to what the sounds mean and understand it. However, despite the difference, people often use both terms interchangeably.

**Estás escuchando:** Escuchando is from the verb, “Escuchar”(to listen). “Escuchando” is the present participle of the verb. **The present participle** in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

Estás escuchando means, “*You’re listening*”.

**No me ha colgado:** This is more “advanced” Spanish you’ll not typically hear/read in this version of Gritty Spanish. But it’s not too tough to understand and use.

It was mentioned in an earlier story that the verb, “Haber”(to have) is an common auxiliary verb in Spanish

that functions as the equivalent of the English "have" as an auxiliary verb.

Haber forms the perfect tenses, which are used similar to the perfect tenses of English and indicate that an action has or will be completed.

This is where that, "**Ha**" comes from. *Ha* is the usted *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb when it conjugated in this manner.

If you want to say, for example, "I've hung up" in Spanish, then it's, "**he** colgado".

*He* is the *first person singular* form (Yo) of the verb conjugated in the present indicative tense.

This is how the verb, "*Haber*" (to have) is conjugated in the indicative present tense.

**Yo** He – I've

**Tú** Has – You've

**Él/ella** Ha – He/she has

**Usted** Ha- You've (formal)

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Hemos – We've

**Ustedes** Han- You've (plural)

**Ellos/Ellas** Han – They've

The word, "*colgado*" comes from the verb, "*colgar*" (to hang up). *Colgado* is the past participle of the verb.

A past participle is a very useful verb form that can function as an adjective or as part of a perfect tense when used in conjunction with the verb *haber*.

**Example:**

"He salido."

"I have left."

Here, the past participle is the word, "*Salido*", which is from the verb, "*Salir*" (to leave).

Let's use the verb "*Estar*" (to be). The past participle of this verb is, "*Estado*".

So to say "**we've been there**", first use "*Haber*" and conjugate it in the *Nosotros/Nosotras* form, "*Hemos*"...

We've been there = Hemos estado allí

If you want to say, "**I've been good**" use the verb, "*Ser*" (to be). The past participle of this verb, is, "*Sido*".

I'll first choose the Yo form of the verb when conjugated in the indicative present tense, "*He*" and use the past participle right after, making it...

He sido bueno = I've been good.

In the story, "*no me ha colgado*" means, "You haven't hung up on me". If you informally say the same thing, then it's, "*no me **has** colgado*".

Remember, you can read up a little bit about the present perfect [in this blog post](#) on the Gritty Spanish blog!

**Te debería colgar**: The word, "*debería*" comes from the verb, "*deber*" (to owe/must). *Debería* is the Yo form of the verb used in the indicative present tense. In this context it means, "*I should*". *Debería* is also the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb in that tense, so it can also be, "He/she/usted should".

Remember, when you talk about yourself or someone else should do something, you use the verb, **Deber** + an **infinitive/nonconjugated verb**.

"Debería colgar" alone makes it, "I should hang up", but she added the **te** before that first conjugated verb, making it, "I should hang up on **you**".

She could have also put the "te" at the end of that infinitive/nonconjugated verb, as, "Debería colgar**te**". So, you have some flexibility when you speak/write Spanish.

**Vendiendo:** Vendiendo is from the verb, "Vender" (to sell). "Vendiendo" is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**.

She asks him, "¿Qué estás vendiendo?", which means, "What are you selling?".

### **- Something to keep in mind -**

Often, you'll hear people use the present indicative tense form of a verb, for example, the **Tú** form of the verb, "vendes" and say, "¿Qué vendes?" also leaving out the **estás** and **vendiendo**. If you do this, you'll be understood perfectly.

The present participle of the verb, "Hacer" (to do/to make) is, "haciendo" (doing), but oftentimes, people will not say, ¿Qué estás vendiendo? (what you are doing?). They will instead use the **Tú** form of the verb, "Haces" and say, "¿Qué haces?".

### Another example:

“¿Qué hacen?”.

“What are they doing?”

Instead of saying, “¿Qué están haciendo?” (what are they doing?).

The present participle is relatively easy to form for the majority of Spanish verbs.

### Examples:

salir (to say/to tell) — diciendo (saying)

morir (to die) — muriendo (dying)

abrir (to open) — abriendo (opening)

venir (to come) — viniendo (coming)

**A dónde va:** When you ask someone, “Where are you going?”, you say, “¿A dónde vas?”. When you say *A dónde*, it literally means, “To where”. You need to use the **A** in there when asking about where someone or something is going.

In the conversation, she uses the *El/ella/usted* form of the verb, “*va*” since is talking about the cruise and where it's going. The cruise is the “third person”. “*Va*” comes from the verb, “*ir*” (to go).

### **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [Phrases to say “sorry” in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Phrases to have phone conversations in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Texting abbreviations in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Help with using the past participles in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Understanding the past perfect tense in Spanish](#)

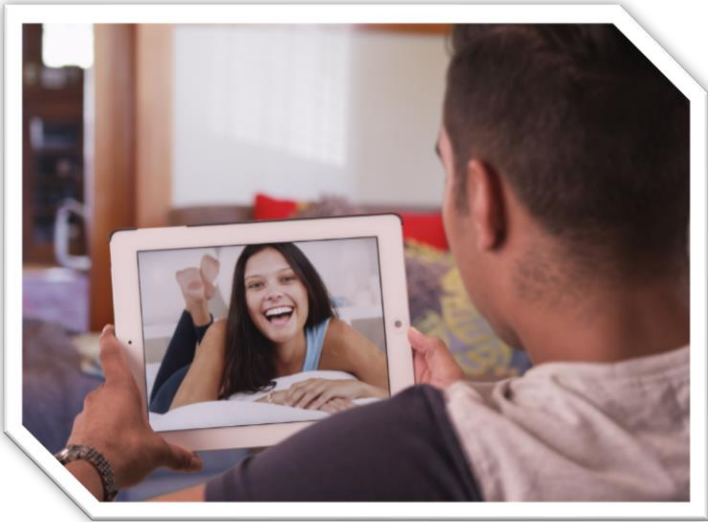
[\(Back to episode list\)](#)

## Quizzes for Episode 25

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 26: Long-Distance Relationship



## Synopsis:

Bruno and his girlfriend, Rosa have been in a serious relationship for about a year and a half. Because of a job opportunity, she had to move to a different country. Bruno has been a bit down about it; he misses her dearly and always wants to hear her voice and see her face. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

**Bruno:** [Extraño](#) mucho a mi novia. [Hablé](#) con ella hace una hora, pero [la llamare](#) de nuevo.

**Bruno:** I miss my girlfriend so much. I spoke to her one hour ago, but I'll call her again.

**\*\*Suenan el teléfono\*\***

**\*\*Phone rings\*\***

**Rosa:** Hola Bruno... Ha pasado mucho tiempo...¿Cómo te va?

**Rose:** Hi Bruno... Long time... How's it going?

**Bruno:** Hola cariño, ¿qué tal? ¿Todo bien? ¿Por qué suenas así? ¿No me extrañas? Solo quería decirte que te extraño tanto.

**Bruno:** Hi baby, what's up? Everything good? Why do you sound like that? You don't miss me? I just wanted to tell you that I miss you so much.

**Rosa:** Awwww, ¡Qué lindo! Te extraño mucho mi amor, pero hablamos hace solo una hora, Bruno...

**Rose:** Aweeee, how sweet! I miss you too my love, but we only spoke an hour ago, Bruno...

**Bruno:** Lo sé, pero ya extraño tu voz. Necesito hablar contigo, quiero verte, Rosa.

**Bruno:** I know, but I miss your voice already. I need to speak with you, I want to see you, Rose.

**Rosa:** Ok, podemos hacer una videollamada, otra vez...

**Rose:** Okay, we can do a video chat, again...

**Bruno:** Ok, mira esa linda carita. Extraño tocar tu piel, extraño abrazarte, bebé. No puedo esperar para verte en seis meses.

**Bruno:** Okay, look at that pretty little face. I miss touching your skin, I miss hugging you, baby. I can't wait to see you in six months.

**Rosa:** Yo también, extraño tus manos, tus manos suaves. ¿Te puedo hacer una pregunta Bruno?

**Rose:** Me too, I miss your hands, your soft hands. Can I ask you a question Bruno?

**Bruno:** ¿Qué pasa, mi cielo?

**Bruno:** What is it, babe?

**Rosa:** ¿Alguna vez miras a otras mujeres en nuestro pueblo?

**Rose:** Do you ever look at other women in our town?

**Bruno:** No cariño, claro que no. O sea, hay muchas mujeres lindas aquí, pero solo pienso en ti. ¿Y tú? ¿Estás interesada en alguno de los hombres de allí?

**Bruno:** No darling, of course not. I mean, there are many beautiful women here, but I only think of you. And you? Are you interested in any of the men there?

**Rosa:** Eh..... Para nada, bebé. Eres la única muj.... digo, el hombre de mi vida.

**Rose:** Eh..... Not at all, baby. You are the only wom... I mean, the man in my life.

**Bruno:** Es bueno saberlo. Bueno, ya compré mi vuelo, voy a pasar dos semanas contigo. No puedo esperar para verte.

**Bruno:** That's good to know. Well, I already purchased my flight, I am going to spend two weeks with you. I can't wait to see you.

**Rosa:** No puedo esperar, cariño. Besos, muah, hablamos pronto.

**Rose:** I can't wait, sweetie. kisses, muah, we talk soon.

**Daniela:** Rosa, ¿cuándo vas a decirle a ese tipo que ya se terminó? Se ve ridículo, estoy cansada de verlo en tu teléfono.

**Daniela:** Rose, when are you going to tell that guy it's over? He looks ridiculous, I am tired of seeing him on your phone.

**Rosa:** Pronto, Daniela, muy pronto. Solo estoy esperando el momento correcto para decirle que nuestra relación no va a sobrevivir.

**Rose:** Soon, Daniela, very soon. I am just waiting for the right time to tell him that our relationship is not going to survive.

**Daniela:** Sí, porque sabes que las relaciones a distancia no funcionan y me tienes a mí ahora...

**Daniela:** Yes, because you know long-distance relationships don't work and you have me now...

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Extraño:** *Extraño* is from the verb, “*Extrañar*” (to miss).

*Extraño* is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. So “*extraño*” means “*I miss*”. If you add a pronoun “*Te*” before the word, it’s “*I miss you*” (*te extraño*).

### **Examples:**

“**Extraño** a mi madre.”

“**I miss** my mother.”

“*Te extraño mucho.*”

“**I miss** you so much.”

**Hablé:** This is from the verb, “*Hablar*” (to talk/to speak).

*Hablé* is the Yo form of the verb, used in the preterite indicative past tense.

### **Examples:**

“**Hablé** con mi madre el otro día.”

“**I spoke** to my mother the other day.”

“¿**Hablaste** con tu hermana?”

“**You spoke** to your sister?”

**La llamaré:** The word, “*llamaré*” comes from the verb, “*Llamar*” (to call). *Llamaré* is the Yo form of this verb used in the future indicative tense.

### **Examples:**

**"Llamaré** a mi abuela para Navidad."

**"I'll call** my grandmother for Christmas."

**"¿Me llamarás** para ir contigo al concierto?"

**"You'll call** me to go with you to the concert?"

**Ha pasado mucho tiempo:** This is a great way to say, "Long time" when you haven't seen someone in a while. It's a phrase you may have memorized but it contains some advanced Spanish in there.

You've seen this in a couple of earlier episodes. There was one episode where one of the characters said, "*Sí, ha sido muy difícil.*" (Yes, it has been hard.) and "*no lo he visto*" (I haven't seen it.)

You know when we say in English, "You've", "I've", "She/he has", "They've", "We've"?

Remember when we spoke about, "*Hay*" (there is/is there) and we said that it comes from the auxiliary verb, "*Haber*" (to have).

In this particular story, the **present perfect** form of the verb is used.

This is how it's conjugated in that form in the present tense:

**Yo** He – I've

**Tú** Has – You've (Informal)

**Usted** Ha – You've (formal)

**Él/Ella** Ha – She/he has

**Nosotros** Hemos – We've

**Ellos/Ellas** Han – They've

In the story, the *Él/Ella/usted* form of the verb, “haber” was used, “**ha**”. They are talking about “time” which would be the “third person”, so that's why it's “ha”.

**Haber** is always followed by a second verb, in this case, it's “ver” (to see), but we have to use the *Past Participle* of the verb, so it becomes, “visto”.

**A past participle** is a verb form that's typically used with perfect tenses. It's really easy to form the past participle in Spanish. All you have to do is drop the ending (-ar, -er or -ir) from the infinitive verb and add **-ado** or **-ido**, depending on the verb. -Ar verbs take **-ado**.

Here are some examples for some **ir** and **er** verbs:

hacer (to do) – hecho (done)  
decir (to say) – dicho (said)  
freír (to fry) – frito (fried)  
escribir (to write) – escrito (written)  
abrir (to open) – abierto (open)  
cubrir (to cover) – cubierto (covered)  
morir (to die) – muerto (dead)  
vivir (to live) – vivido (dead)

And here are some **AR** verbs...

hablar (to talk) – hablado (spoken)  
caminar (to walk) – caminado (walked)  
estudiar (to study) – estudiado (studied)  
usar (to use) – usado (used)  
bailar (to dance) – bailado (danced)  
escuchar (to listen) – escuchado (listened)  
comprar (to buy/to purchase) – comprado (purchased)

So, if I wanted to say, “**He/she purchased** a car”, it would be, “**Ha comprado** un carro.”

In the story, the verb, “*Pasar*” (to pass) was used. The past participle of *Pasar* is “*Pasado*” (Passed).

**Ha pasado mucho tiempo** is literally saying, “A lot of time has passed”.

**¿Cómo te va?:** When you want to say, “How’s it going”, you can use the verb, “*ir*” (to go). The last word, “*va*” is from the verb *ir* (to go), used in the *él/ella/usted* form.

The first word, “*Cómo*” means, “How”.

The direct object pronoun, “*te*” was used, meaning, “You”.

This literally makes it, “How’s it going for you”.

**Cariño:** This is a word that you use to address someone you love, (just like “honey”, “dear”, “sweetheart”, “darling”, “love” in English). When I first learned that word, I called a woman, “*Cariña*” thinking I had to change the ending since she is female, but no, you say, “*Cariño*” when you’re talking to a man or woman.

I had received some really strange looks saying, “*Cariña*”. They thought I forgot their names and I was talking about a woman named, *Cariña*.

In Spanish, you can also say: *Querida/Querido*.

Here are a few others:

- a) Amor
- b) Mi amor
- c) Mi vida
- d) Cielo (Literally means, “sky, heaven”)

e) Mi cielo

f) Mi nena/ Mi nene (or just nena/ nene).

**¿No me extrañas?:** If you ever want to ask someone, "You don't miss me?" say, "¿No me extrañas?". *Extrañas* comes from the verb, "*Extrañar*" (to miss). *Extrañas* is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

If you want to say, "You miss me?" remove the **no**, and just say, "Me extrañas?"

**¡Qué Lindo!:** This just means, "How sweet!" or "How nice!".

For "how sweet", you can say:

¡Qué lindo!

¡Qué dulce!

¡Qué tierno!

When a woman finds a guy attractive, she'll say, "*Qué guapo*" or when a man finds a woman attractive, he'll say, "*Qué guapa*".

Maybe young teens would say "*creo que es lindo/a*" when they see a boy they like, but if they are over 20, it's less likely.

On the other hand, you'll hear, "*¡Qué lindo!*", for example, when a guy does something really nice for his girlfriend/wife.

¡Qué lindo/a! Is definitely more like "how sweet" than "he/she is attractive".

A person could say “¡Qué lindo!” to a baby or young boy, but that would mean more like “how cute”.

**Hace solo una hora:** You can use “hace” when you want to say, “Ago”, for example, “8 hours ago”(hace ocho horas), “8 years ago”(hace ocho años), “A year ago”(hace un año), etc.

In this case, we also have the word “solo”, she said, “we **only** spoke an hour ago”. “Solo” means *only/just*.

**Example:**

“Me casé hace **solo** un año.”  
“I got married **just** a year ago.”

**Other examples:**

“Conocí a mi esposa **hace cinco años**.”  
“I met my wife **5 years ago**.”

“**Hace un mes**, fui a México.”  
“**A month ago**, I went to Mexico.”

See the pattern?

**Ya extraño tu voz:** Here, he is using the verb, “Extrañar”(to miss) in the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. The subject is, her voice (voz), “I miss your voice”(Extraño tu voz).

We mentioned that the word, “Ya” means, “already”, it makes it mean, “I already miss your voice”.

**Videollamada**: “A Call” in Spanish is, “*Una llamada*”.  
Video chat is *Videollamada*.

Other alternatives are technically correct, but people don't use them as much, such as:

- Chateo por video
- Charla por video
- Video charla
- Charla con video.

In formal contexts, you can say, *Videoconferencia*.

**Linda carita**: The word, “*Linda*” means,  
“*Pretty/beautiful*”.

The word for face in Spanish is, *Cara*, but the character added a diminutive, “*ita*” to the word, making it, “*carita*”, so after adding the word “*linda*” at the beginning, we have “*Pretty little face*”.

You can add diminutives some words to indicate smallness or show affection.

Just like in English when you say “*kitty*” instead of “*cat*” or “*doggy*” instead of “*dog*”, to give it some “*smallness*” or “*cuteness*”.

### **Examples:**

- (Gato) Gat**ito** =kitty (male) /gatita (female)
- (Casa) Cas**ita**= little house
- (Abuela) Abuel**ita**= grandma
- (Face) Car**ita** = Little face

And so on...

**Extraño abrazarte**: Again, the word, “extraño”(I miss). It's the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

He then followed up with the unconjugated verb, “abrazar”(to hug).

He then threw the “**te**” in there, making it, “you”.

*abrazarte* means, “To hug **you**” or, “hugging you”.

**Te puedo hacer una pregunta**: “Puedo” is the first-person singular present indicative form of the verb, “poder” (I can/can I).

Then we have the whole term, “*hacer+una+pregunta*”, from which “*hacer*” is an unconjugated transitive verb that means “to make”. It could also mean “to do” in other contexts.

“Una” means “one” and “*pregunta*” means *inquiry/question*. Don't forget we have the pronoun “te” (you) at the beginning.

I know it's a little strange because it's saying, “**Make** a *question/inquiry*”.

“*Te puedo hacer una pregunta.*”

(You could also say the following:

“¿*Puedo hacerte una pregunta?*” and it literally means,

“Can I make an inquiry to you?”

You can also say:

- ¿Puedo preguntarte algo?
- ¿Te puedo preguntar algo?

Both meaning:

*"Can I ask you something?"*.

The character could have also said, *"Tengo una pregunta"* (I have a question).

**Mi cielo:** If someone loves you or really likes you, they may say to you, *"mi cielo"*, which literally means, *"My sky/my heaven"*. So instead of saying, *"Mi amor"* (my love), they'll say, *"mi cielo"* to mean the same thing. It's like when we call someone, *"darling"*, *"sweetheart"*, *"my love"*, etc.

Some other popular names you can call someone you really love/like in Spanish.

- a) Mi amor
- b) Mi vida
- c) Mi nena (or just *nena*)
- d) Cariño

**O sea:** This is another word you can use to say, *"I mean"*, instead of *"Quiero decir"*.

### **Examples:**

**"O sea, no está muy claro."**

**"I mean, it is not very clear."**

Literally, *"O sea"* means something like *"or it might be"*.

One would translate it as something a bit more idiomatic, such as:

- I mean
- That is (to say)
- as the case may be
- in other words
- rather

**Pienso en ti**: *Pienso* comes from the verb, “*Pensar*”(to think). *Pienso* is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense. When you want to say, *I think about you*, it's, “*Pienso en ti*”.

**Example:**

“¿**Piensas** en mí?”

“**You think** about me?”

“**Nunca piensan** en ti.”

“**They never think** about you.”

“**Nunca piensa** en nosotros.”

“**He/she never thinks** about us.”

**Digo**: *Digo* literally means, “*I say*”. It comes from the verb, “*Decir*”(to say /to tell). It's the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

In this story, however, it's, “*I mean*”, similar to “**Osea**”.

**Ya compré mi vuelo**: *Compré* is from the verb, “*Comprar*”(to buy). *Compré* is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

Ya = already

Making, “Ya compré”, “I already bought/purchased”.

Mi = My

Vuelo = Flight

**Se ve ridículo**: She is talking about Bruno, the third person, this is why she used the reflexive pronoun, “se”. “Ve” is from the verb, “Ver”(to see). Ve is the *Él/ella/usted* form of that verb in the present indicative tense.

If I wanted to say, “**You** look ridiculous”, I’ll say, “**Te** ves ridículo”. Notice, the **TÚ** form of the verb, “Ver”(to see) was used to match the reflexive pronoun?

### **HELPFUL ARTICLES ON OUR GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [Phrases to say “I miss you” in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Phrases an ex-boyfriend would say in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Love words in Spanish for your girlfriend](#)
- ✓ [Different ways to say, “I like you” in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Cariño in Spanish & other Spanish pet names to know](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### **Quizzes for Episode 26**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 27: Visiting the Doctor



## Synopsis:

Lucas had been up all night long thanks to a cough, some issues with his back and a migraine. Today he visits his doctor, Dr. Lòpez, to check it out. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

[Click here to learn more and purchase the audio!](#)

*\*Un hombre entra al consultorio de un doctor\**

*\*A man walks into a doctor's office\**

**Lucas:** Hola, y buen día...

**Lucas:** Hello, and good day...

**Recepcionista:** Hola señor González, ¿cómo estás hoy?  
¿Todo está bien hoy?

**Receptionist:** Hello Mr. González, how are you doing today. Is everything okay today?

**Lucas:** Hola Mayra, todo está bien. ¿Como estás tú y los niños? Solo me siento mal.

**Lucas:** Hey Mayra All is well. How are you and the kids?  
I am just under the weather.

**Recepcionista:** Siento escuchar eso, Lucas. Entonces, ¿hiciste una cita con el Doctor López? ¿Hablaste con la otra recepcionista esta mañana?

**Receptionist:** Sorry to hear that, Lucas. So, you made an appointment with Dr. López? Did you speak with the other receptionist this morning?

**Lucas:** Sí, yo hablé con ella aproximadamente a las nueve esta mañana.

**Lucas:** yes, I spoke to her around 9 a.m. this morning

**Recepcionista:** Ok, el doctor va a estar contigo pronto. Por ahora, ve a ver la enfermera en esa habitación para que te revise los signos vitales. Ya sabes la rutina, tiene que revisar tu peso, altura, temperatura y la presión arterial...

**Receptionist:** Okay, the Doctor will be with you soon. For now, go see the nurse in that room to check your vitals. You already know the routine, she has to check your weight, height, temperature and your blood pressure...

*\*\*Lucas entra a la habitación para la revisión de sus signos vitales.\*\**

*\*\*Lucas enters the room to check his vitals\*\**

*\*\*El doctor sale su oficina\*\**

*\*\*Doctor walks out of his office\*\**

**Dr. López:** Hola Lucas, ¡mucho tiempo sin verte! Ven a mi consultorio... Entonces, ¿qué te trae por aquí?

**Dr. Lòpez:** Hey Lucas, long time no see! Come into my office... So, what brings you here today?

**Lucas:** Solo tengo un resfriado, un dolor de cabeza, es una migraña y dolor de garganta. Me duele la espalda también.

**Lucas:** I just have a cold, a headache, it's a migraine and a sore throat. My back hurts too.

**Dr. López:** Ok, no hay problema, voy a atenderte. Abre la boca.

**Dr. Lòpez:** Okay, no problem, I am going to take care of you. open your mouth...

**Lucas:** Ahhhhhhh...

**Lucas:** Ahhhhhhhh...

**Dr. López:** Muy bien. Ahora, voy a chequear tus flexiones...Voy a mirar adentro de tus orejas ahora...También, tengo que sacar rayos X de la espalda.

**Dr. Lòpez:** Very good. Now, I am going to check your flexions...I am going to look inside your ear now...Also, I have to do some X-rays for your back.

**Lucas:** Ok, ¿crees que está rota o algo?

**Lucas:** Okay, you think it's broken or something?

**Dr. López:** No, pero queremos estar seguros. También, voy a darte tus recetas para tus medicamentos... Para el resfriado, toma estas pastillas dos a tres veces al día.

**Dr. Lòpez:** No, but we want to be sure. Also, I am going to give you your prescriptions for your medications... For the cold, take these pills 2-3 times a day.

**Lucas:** Está bien Dr. López.

**Lucas:** Okay Dr. López.

**--Fin de la historia--**

--End of story--

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Me siento mal:** The word “Siento” comes from the verb, “Sentir” (to feel). Siento is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

He is reflexively using the verb, this is why he put the reflexive pronoun, “**me**” before the conjugated word, “siento” making it, “*me siento*” (I feel).

Mal = bad.

Making this literally, “*I feel bad*”, but you can use this phrase when you are under the weather or you feel bad about something.

How do you ask someone, “*You feel bad?*” or “*Are you under the weather?*”

“¿Te sientes mal?”

**Hiciste una cita:** The word, “hiciste” (You did/you made) comes from the verb, “Hacer” (to do/to make).

*Hiciste* is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

*Una cita* means, "An appointment".

"*Cita*" can also be a **date**, like when you are going out to dinner or a movie with a special someone.

### Example:

"*Tengo una **cita** con mi novia esta noche.*"

"*I have a **date** with my girlfriend tonight.*"

**Hablaste**: This is from the verb, "*Hablar*" (to talk/to speak). *Hablaste* is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

### Examples:

"¿***Hablaste** con tu novia ayer?*"

"***Did you speak** to your girlfriend yesterday?*"

"***Hablaste** conmigo hace tres semanas.*"

"***You spoke** to me 3 weeks ago.*"

**Hablé**: The word *hablé* (I spoke) comes from the verb, "*Hablar*" (to talk/to speak). *Hablé* is the *Yo* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense.

### Examples:

"***No hablé** con mi esposa anoche.*"

"***I didn't speak** to my wife last night.*"

**Va a estar contigo**: Here, she is using the verb, "*ir*" (to go) about what the Doctor is **going to do**, this is why she is using, "*Va*" which is the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb, used in the present indicative tense.

Remember, when you talk about what you or someone else is **going to do**, you use the following formula:

**Ir + a + an unconjugated verb.**

In this case, she conjugated the verb, “ir”(to go) to “va”, since she is talking about the Doctor. The Doctor is the 3rd person.

She then used, **a...**

Then the unconjugated verb, “Estar”(to be).

Contigo = With you.

**Ve a ver:** When you want to give someone a command and say, “Go”, then you may use the verb, ‘ir’(to go). This is where that, “**ve**” comes from. This is the *Tú* form of the verb used in the command form/ Imperative affirmative.

People will use the command to tell someone to “Get away” or “leave” in a rude manner too. They’ll use the *Tú* form of the verb, “Ve” and add a **te** to the end of it, making it, “Vete”.

When you just say “ve”(go), you’ll have to say something else after...

**Examples:**

“**Ve** a la cocina.”

“**Go** to the Kitchen.”

“**Ve** y come la manzana.”

“**Go** and eat the apple.”

In the story, the character said, “Ve a ver”, “Go to see”.

The verb “Ver” means, “to see”.

**Que te revise:** I know for a fact that as an English native speaker, you'll want to say, "*chechar*" or "*chequear*" since it's sounds close to English.

Yes, "*to check*" is sometimes translated to "*chechar*" or "*chequear*" in Spanish.

These words started getting used more due to the influence of English, but there are words in Spanish that you can use to convey the idea.

Some professional native speakers may not like using it at all but, that does not mean that the word is incorrect. However, the wording would need to be different.

You can use any of the following:

- Para que te chequee los signos vitals
- Para la revisión de los signos vitals
- Para el chequeo de los signos vitales

To make things interesting, we even had the doctor use it when he said:

*"Voy a chequear tus flexiones."*

*"I am going to check your reflexes."*

Here the word, "*revise*" was used in this part of **Ya sabes**

**la rutina:** The word, "*Ya*" in this context means, "*Already*".

The word after, "*Sabes*" (You know) comes from the verb, "*Saber*" (to know). *Sabes* is the *TÚ* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative past tense.

When you look at the English side of the transcripts, you'll see, "*La rutina*" means, "*The routine*".

**Mucho tiempo sin verte**: When you have not seen someone in a long time, you can use this phrase.

The last word, “Ver”(to see) was used and the character added, “Te” to the end of it, meaning, “you”. Together, “Verte” means, “to see **you**”.

**¿Qué te trae por aquí?**: Let’s first look at the word, “trae”, it comes from the verb, “traer” (to bring). trae is the Él/ella/usted form of the verb, why? Because she doesn’t really know what brought him there, that is the third person. Even if she knew, that unknown would have still been used, that’s the “Third person” of the verb.

The pronoun **te** was added before that conjugated verb, it means, “**you**”.

**Dolor de cabeza**: This phrase means, “headache”. Spanish-speaking people would also use it the same way as us English-speaking people use it to talk about someone being a “Pain in the neck” or a “Pain in the @ss”.

When you say, “dolor de cabeza”, it literally means, “Pain of head” or “head’s pain”, but we know it simply as “Headache”.

**Me duele la espalda**: In Spanish, you don’t say “my back hurts” like you do in English. You literally say “The back hurts me” and people just assume that if “the back” hurts you, that back is probably yours.

Same as if you are talking about any other body part, such as your head, your finger, your neck, etc.

As you can see, this starts with the reflexive pronoun, “me”.

The word, “Duele” comes from the verb, “Doler”(to hurt). “Duele” is the “él/ella/Usted” form of the verb in the

present indicative tense. The *BACK* is the subject, this is why the “*él/ella/Usted*” form of the verb is used.

It's the same formula if you want to talk about your head hurting you:

### Examples:

*“Me duele la cabeza.”*

*“My head hurts.”*

Or your throat

*“Me duele la garganta.”*

*“My throat hurts.”*

If the part of your body that hurts comes in twos (or more), and they're all hurting, the “*doler*” verb will turn into the plural form (*ellas/ellos/ustedes*):

*“**Me duelen** los pies.”*

*“My feet hurt.”*

*(Literally: The feet hurt me)*

*“**Me duelen** los ojos.”*

*“My eyes hurt.”*

You can learn some more useful medical terms [in this Gritty Spanish blog post!](#)

**Voy a atenderte:** He is using the verb, “*ir*” (to go) to talk about what he is going to do. “*Voy*” is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

He uses the following formula...

**Ir + a + an unconjugated verb.**

In this case, he conjugated the verb, “ir” (to go) to “voy”, since he is talking about himself.

He then added the unconjugated verb, “atender” (to attend to/ to look after).

To complete the sentence, he added, the direct object pronoun, “**Te**” meaning, “**you**”.

Voy a atenderte = “I am going to take care of you”.

**Abre:** This is a direct command. When you say “Abre”, you’re using the verb, “Abrir” (to open). Abre is the **TÚ** form of the command/imperative mood.

### Examples:

“**¡Abre** la Puerta!”

“**Open** the door!”.

“**Abre** las manos!”

“**Open** your hands!”

If you want to say, “Open it” when we are talking about **the door**,” (la Puerta), we are first going to use the **TÚ** form of the verb, “Abrir” (to open) for example and say, “Abre” and add, “**La**” to it, making it, “**ábre-la**”.

**Voy a darte:** Another example of someone using the verb, “ir” (to go) to talk about what he is going to do. “Voy” is the Yo form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

He uses the following formula...

**Ir + a + an unconjugated verb.**

In this case, he conjugated the verb, “ir” (to go) to “voy”, since he is talking about himself.

He then added the unconjugated verb, “*Dar*”(to give).

To complete the sentence, he added, the direct object pronoun, “**Te**” meaning, “**you**”.

Voy a darte = “*I am going to take care of you*”.

**Toma estas pastillas:** He is giving a direct command using the *Tú* form of the verb, “*Tomar*”(to take/to drink).

*Toma* is the imperative /command mood when you're using the *Tú* form.

### Example:

“**Toma** ese autobús para ir a tu destino.”

“**Take** that bus to go to your destination.”



### USEFUL ARTICLES ON THE GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!

- ✓ [Spanish medical terms](#)
- ✓ [Talking about your health and well-being in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Spanish vocabulary for nurses](#)
- ✓ [Learn Medical Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Cariño in Spanish & other Spanish pet names to know](#)

([Back to episode list](#))



### Quizzes for Episode 27

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# Episode 28: Where should we go?



## Synopsis:

Best friends Florencia and Kiara are both a little sad about leaving the DR. While seated by the pool listening to a live band, hours before their flight back home, they are already planning their next trip. The two have a chat about what country should be their next destination. ([Back to episode list](#))

**Learn More About Gritty Spanish & Purchase Audio!**

[Click here to learn more and purchase the audio!](#)

**Florencia:** Estoy tan [triste de irme de esta isla](#) bonita. [Fue tan divertido.](#)

**Florencia:** I am so sad to leave this beautiful island. It was so much fun.

**Kiara:** Definitivamente, tenemos que regresar pronto.

**Kiara:** Definitely, we have to come back soon.

**Florencia:** Sí, quiero regresar aquí el próximo año para las vacaciones.

**Florencia:** Yes, I want to come back here next year for vacation.

**Kiara:** Esa es una buena idea, Florencia. ¿Qué lugar tienes en mente?

**Kiara:** That's a good idea, Florencia. Where do you have in mind?

**Florencia:** Estaba pensando en un país en América Central o América del Sur.

**Florencia:** I was thinking about a country in central or south America.

**Kiara:** ¿Pero cuál país? ¿Perú? ¿Guatemala? ¿Panamá? ¿Argentina o Colombia?

**Kiara:** But which country? Peru? Guatemala? Panama? Argentina or Colombia?

**Florencia:** Podemos ir a un país en América Central.

**Florencia:** We can go to a country in central America.

**Kiara:** Suena como un plan genial, ¿pero cuál país en América Central? ¿Honduras?, ¿Nicaragua?, ¿Panamá?  
Escuché cosas geniales de Panamá.

**Kiara:** Sounds like a great plan, but what county in

central America? Honduras?, Nicaragua?, Panama? I heard great things about Panama.

**Florencia:** No, Panamá es demasiado caro para mí. Tal vez Nicaragua...

**Florencia:** No, Panama is too expensive for me. Maybe Nicaragua.

**Kiara:** Deja de ser tacaña, Florencia. Pero podemos organizar un par de días. Debemos de poder encontrar algunos vuelos baratos. Pero podemos hablar más sobre esto más tarde.

**Kiara:** Stop being cheap, Florencia. But we can organize in a few days. We should be able to find some cheap flights. But we can talk about that later.

**Florencia:** Sí, ¿a qué hora es nuestro vuelo de nuevo?

**Florencia:** Yes, what time is our flight again?

**Kiara:** Creo que va a ser a las diez. Tengo que ver mi teléfono y volver a revisar la reservación.

**Kiara:** I think it's going to be at 10. I have to go on my phone and double-check the reservation.

**Florencia:** Bueno, son casi cinco menos cuarto, debemos irnos.

**Florencia:** Well, it's almost quarter to 5, we should get going.

**Kiara:** Sí, estoy de acuerdo, no queremos perder nuestro vuelo.

**Kiara:** Yes, I agree. We don't want to miss our flight.

**Florencia:** Tenemos que llamar un taxi para que pase por nosotras. ¿Cuánto cuesta el taxi al aeropuerto otra vez?

**Florencia:** We have to call a taxi to pick us up. How much is the taxi to the airport again?

**Kiara:** Todos dicen solo quince dólares. Pero creo que puedo conseguirlo menos caro.

**Kiara:** Everyone says it's only 15 dollars. But I think I can get it less expensive.

**Florencia:** Está bien, voy a llamar ese tipo de ayer. Me dijo que era taxista.

**Florencia:** Okay, I am going to call that guy from yesterday. He told me that he is a Taxi driver.

**Kiara:** Lo es, lo vi con un par de turistas el otro día cerca de la playa. Él es muy guapo también. Tengo su tarjeta de negocios.

**Kiara:** He is, I saw him with a couple of tourists the other day close to the beach. He is very cute too. I have his business card.

**Florencia:** Mejor sé buena Kiara, hmmm. Vámonos ahora a terminar de preparar nuestras maletas.

**Florencia:** You better be good, Kiara, hmmm. Let's go now and finish preparing our luggage.

**Kiara:** Lo llamaré primero para averiguar cuánto cobra exactamente. Jejejeje...Va a darnos un buen precio. Jejejeje...

**Kiara:** I will call him first to find out how much he charges exactly. Hehehehe...He is going to give us a good price. Hehehe...

--Fin de la historia--

--End of story—

## **BREAKING IT ALL DOWN**

**Triste de irme de esta isla**: The word, “triste” means “Sad”. Irme is from the verb, “ir” (to go). When you are talking about leaving a place, use that verb and add a reflexive pronoun. In this sentence, she used, “me”.

**Fue tan divertido**: The word in here, “Fue” comes from the verb, “ir” (to go). Fue is the preterite indicative past tense él/ella/Usted version of the verb. When you want to say, “it was”, you can use “Fue”, since “it” is the “third person”.

### **Examples:**

“**It was** a good time.”

“**Fue** una buena época.”

“**Fue** un placer conocerte.”

“**It was** a pleasure meeting you.”

**Estaba pensando**: Estaba comes from the verb, “estar” (to be). Estaba is the Imperfect past tense of the verb, “estar”.

In this tense, Estaba is the Yo form of the verb, but it is also the Él/ella/usted form of the verb. When you want to talk about you or someone doing something over and over in the past, you use the Imperfect tense.

Some linguists and grammarians call the imperfect the “present” of the past because it has exactly the same functions that the present tense has (ongoing states,

customary actions, description, etc.), just that the time is past, not present.

When we use the present, we're in contact with what's going on (**I study, I work, there's snow in the street**, etc.); the same is true for when we use the imperfect. We "transport" ourselves to that time and tell what the situation was around us, what was happening, what happened habitually, etc.

When we use the preterit tense, we compartmentalize a period or isolate an event and separate ourselves from it (it is no longer happening in the "*present of the past*", it is just past).

"*Pensando*" is the present participle of the verb. The present participle in Spanish are verb forms used to express continuous or ongoing actions. Spanish present participles end in **-ndo**, which is the equivalent of the English ending **-ing**. *Pensando* comes from the verb, "*Pensar*" (to think).

**Escuché cosas geniales:** *Escuché* (I heard/I listened) is from the verb, *Escuchar* (to listen). *Escuché* is the Yo form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

Cosas= Things

Genial = Great

Cosas geniales = Great things.

**Deja de ser tacaño:** If you ever want to tell someone to stop doing something, use the verb, "*Dejar*"

The character said, "*Deja de ser...*" (Stop being...)

*Deja* comes from the verb, "*Dejar*" (to leave/to let). She is giving her a direct command, so she uses the command/ Imperative "*tú*" form of the verb, "*Dejar*".

Anytime you want to tell someone to stop doing something, use the following formula:

**Dejar + de + An infinitive/non conjugated verb.**

When used with the preposition **de** before the **infinitive (dejar + de + infinitive)**, it means to quit or to stop doing something (*or to not stop*):

**Examples:**

**“¡Deja de ser así!”**

**“Stop being like that!”**

**“Deja de hablar tanto.”**

**“Stop talking so much.”**

**“Deja de ser grosero.”**

**“Stop being rude.”**

The pattern is easy, right?

**Debemos de poder encontrar:** We spoke about what you HAVE to do before, but how about you SHOULD/MUST do? You can use the verb, “Deber”(to owe, must). “Debemos” is the *nosotros/nosotras* form of the verb in the indicative present tense.

**Examples** of how to use *deber* to talk about you **should/must** do something:

**“Debo ir a Venezuela el próximo año.”**

**“I should go to Venezuela next year.”**

**“Debes escuchar a esta canción.”**

**“You should listen to this song.”**

**“Debemos ir al zoológico hoy.”**

**“We should go to the zoo today.”**

And right after, *debemos*, she used the full, un-conjugated verb, “*poder*”(to be able to/can do something) and followed up with another un-conjugated verb, “*Encontrar*”(to find).

**Volver a revisar**: *Volver* is a verb that means, “to come back/to return to go over”.

*Revisar* means, “to review/to revise”. It also can be, “To go over” “to check”.

### Examples:

“Tengo que **volver a revisar** el artículo antes de publicarlo.”

“I have to **double-check** de article before I publish it.”

“Voy a **volver a revisar** la lista de las cosas que voy a comprar.”

“I am going to **double-check** the list of the things I am going to buy.”

**Pase por nosotras**: You may also say the following:

“Para que nos recoja” or

“Para que pase por nosotras”.

The verb, “*pase*” is from the verb, “*Pasar*”(to pass).

**Puedo conseguirlo**: *Puedo*”(I can) comes from the verb, “*Poder*”(to be able to/can do something). “*Puedo*” is the “Yo” form of the verb used in the present indicative tense.

The full/unconjugated verb is, “*conseguir*” means “To get”.

“**Lo**” was added to the end of the verb, making it, “*conseguirlo*”.

The “**lo**” represents the price of the cab ride to the airport.

**Ese tipo:** The word *tipo* here means, “Guy”, “dude”, etc. If she was talking about a woman, she would have said, “*tipa*”. This is more of a “slang” term.

The word, “*Tipo*” means, “type”, like when a woman says, “He is not my **type**” (Él no es mi **tipo**).

You can also use, “*tipo*” to say, “**kind**”.

### Examples:

“¿Qué **tipo** de zapatos debería comprar?”  
“What **kind** of shoes should I buy?”

“Ese es el **tipo** de cosa mi hermana dice.”  
“That’s the **kind** of thing my sister says.”

**Lo es, lo vi:** If you ever want to say, “He/she/it is” in a similar way she uses it in the convo, you can say, “Lo es”. That “**Lo**” can be anything. It’s general info, it’s not gender-specific when you use it in that manner. This is why you’ll never hear, “*la es*”.

You use “lo es” even when using feminine nouns.

### Example:

**Juan:** Gabriel es muy bonita.  
**John:** Gabriel is very pretty.

**Pablo:** Sí, lo es.

**Paul:** Yes, she is.

Remember, the “Es” is from the verb, “ser”(to be). *Es* can be *Él/ella/usted/third person* or thing.

*Vi*(I saw) comes from the verb, “Ver”(to see). *Vi* is the *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

*Lo* represents him, so “**lo** *vi*” means, “I saw **him**”. If it was a woman, then it would have been, “**La** *vi*”(I saw her), a group of women, “**las** *vi*”(I saw them).

**Mejor sé:** Let's first talk about the word, “**sé**”. In this context, it's not the same *sé* from the verb, “Saber”(to know). It comes from the verb, “Ser”(to be), but it's used as an imperative/command in the “*TÚ*” form.

So, if you want to give a command to your friend, child, or whomever and say, “Be good/be nice”, you can say, “**sé** *buena/o*”.

The word “*mejor*” means, “Better”, but when you say it before a command, it means, “You better”...

**Me dijo que era:** *Dijo* comes from the verb, “Decir”(to say/to tell). *Dijo* is the *Él/ella/usted* form of the verb used in the preterite indicative tense.

Now she is using some “advanced” Spanish here.

If she was speaking in the present tense and said, “He says *he is*”, then it would just be, “*Dice que es*”. But she is speaking in the past saying he **TOLD** her that he is.

The “*me*” makes it clear that he told me.

Here, “*que*” means “*that*”.

**Era** is the first-person singular (yo) imperfect indicative form of “ser”(to be).

This is how to conjugate “ser”(to be) in imperfect indicative form.

Yo **Era** = I was

Tú **Eras** = You were

Él/ella **Era** = He/she was

Usted **Era** = You (formal) were

Nosotros/Nosotras **Eramos** = We were

Ustedes **Eran** = You all were

aEllos/ellas **Eran** = They were

Imperfect for ser, “**era**” is like “used to be”:

### Example:

*“Él era doctor, ahora es veterinario.”*

*“He “was” a doctor (for some time), but now he is a vet.”*

Preterite for ser, “**fue**” is like “was”.

### Example:

*“**Fue** un buen espectáculo.”*

*“**It was** a good show.”*

(the show is over and done with).

**Vámonos:** This is a direct command. When you say “Vamos”, you’re using the verb, “ir”(to go). **Vamos** is the **Nosotros/Nosotras** form of the command/imperative mood.

In the conversation, she said, “Vamos” and then added that, “**Nos**” in there, making it, “**Vámonos**”. The “s” in **vamos** was removed, because as you can imagine, it would be very difficult to say, “**Vámosnos**”.

### Example:

*“¡Vámonos de aquí!”*

*“Let’s get outta here!”*

**Lo llamaré:** “Llamaré”(I will call) is another example of a verb being used in the future indicative tense. *Llamaré* is the Yo form of the verb in that tense.

Here is how the verb, “Llamaré”(To call) is conjugated in the future indicative tense:

**Yo** Llamaré – I **will** call

**Tú** Llamarás – You **will** call

**Él/Ella** Llamará – She/He **will** call

**Usted** Llamará- You (formal) will call

**Nosotros/Nosotras** Llamaremos – We **will** call

**Ustedes** Lllamarán - You all **will** call

**Ellos/Ellas** - Lllamarán – They **will** call

### Examples:

*“No me llamarás, ¿verdad?”*

*“You will not call me, right?”*

*“Carlos nunca me llamará.”*

*“Carlos will never call me.”*

**Va a darnos:** The word, “Va”(he/she/usted goes) is from the verb, “ir”(to go). Va is the *Él/Ella/Usted* form of the verb used in the indicative present tense. They are talking about the third person, the cab driver, so this is why she used *Él/Ella/used*.

The infinitive verb, “Dar”(to give) follows.

Then she added the “Nos”(us).

Making, “Va a darnos...”(he is going to give us...)

### **USEFUL ARTICLES ON THE GRITTY SPANISH BLOG!**

- ✓ [57 Spanish travel phrases](#)
- ✓ [Learn about the 21 in Spanish-speaking countries](#)
- ✓ [Making plans in Spanish](#)
- ✓ [Spanish phrases for enjoyment](#)

([Back to episode list](#))

### **Quizzes for Episode 28**

[Click](#) on image below to access!



# **Purchase Gritty Spanish Basics Audio! Special Offer!**

If you loved this eBook and want the full Gritty Spanish experience, complete with audios of all episodes dramatically voiced by native speakers, enabling you to access all the content via our webapp and mobile apps, then [click here to check out our special offer!](#)

Thanks again and enjoy your journey to fluency and continue having fun with your Spanish learning!

